

A HISTORY OF THE ATHABASCA RIVER BASIN TO 1914: AN INITIAL
BIBLIOGRAPHY OF SECONDARY SOURCES¹

COMPILED FOR THE DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY,
CENTRE FOR GLOBAL STUDIES AND SOCIAL ANALYSIS,
ATHABASCA UNIVERSITY

¹ Version 3 of 3. Titles by subject heading. Cross-referenced with select primary sources.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Source Guides, Annotated Bibliographies, and Major Sources	4
Athabasca River Basin	16
Pre-History	24
Archeological History	26
Oral Traditions and Spoken History	31
Women's History	32
Religion, Missionary History and the Church	35
Northern Alberta	38
Political History.....	55
Legal History and Current Developments	57
First Nations	57
Métis	71
Indigenous Knowledge	73
Treaties	74
Treaty 6.....	76
Treaty 8.....	80
Early Explorers and Exploration	84
Peter Pond: 1740-1807	86
Samuel Hearne: 1745-1792.....	87
Philip Turnor: 1752?-1800.....	87
Sir Alexander Mackenzie: 1763-1820	88
Peter Fidler: 1769-1822	89
David Thompson: 1770-1857.....	90
The Fur Trade.....	92
Forts and Trading Posts.....	103
The Klondike	104
The Royal North-West Mounted Police	107
Ethnicity and Culture	110
Primitive Art	113
Folk Art	113
Music and Verse	114
Literature and Narrative.....	117
Painting and Printmaking	118
Photography	120
Theatre and Performance Art.....	121
Material Culture and Special Topics	123

Agriculture, Industry and Resource Development.....	124
General Studies.....	124
Agriculture.....	125
Forestry	128
Oil and Oil Sands	131
Natural Gas.....	134
Transportation.....	134
Special Topics.....	135
Economics	136
Ecology, Environmental and Natural History.....	139
Parks Canada/Provincial Parks	143
<i>Jasper</i>	146
<i>Woodbuffalo</i>	149
Geology, Geography and Climate	150
Unpublished Sources	154
Theses and Dissertations.....	156
Methodology and Continuing Research	161
<i>Web Resources</i>	163
<i>Archives</i>	165
<i>Athabasca University Databases</i>	166
<i>Journals</i>	167
Comparative Analysis	169

Source Guides, Annotated Bibliographies, and Major Sources

- Acland, Joan. 2001. *First Nations Artists in Canada: A Biographical-bibliographical Guide, 1960 to 1999*. Montréal: Gail and Stephen A. Jarislowsky Institute for Studies in Canadian Art.
- Adams, Gary. 1981. "Fur Trade Archaeology in Western Canada: A Critical Evaluation and Bibliography," *Saskatchewan Archaeology* 2 (1&2): 39-53.
- Adams, William Hampton and David R. Brauner. 1998. *A Bibliography for the History of Skagway, Alaska, and the Klondike Gold Rush*. [S.l. : W.H. Adams and D.R. Brauner. Note: "Based on an earlier work by Charles Konopa."
- Adams, Willi Paul. 1994. *Directory of European Historians of North America: Addresses, Publications, Research in Progress. 3rd Edition, Revised*. Berlin, Germany : John F. Kennedy Institut for North American Studies, Freie Universität Berlin.
- Alberta. Alberta Culture and Community Spirit. 2008. *Listing of Historic Resources*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture and Community Spirit.
- Alberta Métis Settlements: A Compendium of Background Documents*. 1984. Edmonton: Native Affairs Secretariate.
- Allen, Robert and Mary Tobin. 1989. *Native Studies in Canada: A Research Guide. 3rd Edition*. Indian and Northern Affairs. Ottawa: Queen's Printer.
- Allington-Baker, Amanda. ed. [1989?] *Our Home and Native Land: Books About Canada's Native Peoples*. Toronto: Canadian Book Information Centre.
- Andrews, Thomas A. 1988. "Selected Bibliography of Native Resource Management Systems and Native Knowledge of the Environment," In: *Traditional Knowledge and Renewable Resource Management in Northern Regions*. Edited by Milton M. R. Freeman and Ludwig N. Carbyn. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta.
- Artibise, A.F.J. 1978. *Western Canada Since 1870: A Select Bibliography*. Vancouver: UBC.
- Asch, Michael. 1983. *Guide to Ethnohistoric Sources: Dene and Inuvialuit Land Use Overlap*. [S.l.]: Dene Mapping Project.
- Aubrey, Merrily K. 1989. *Sources for Women's History at the Provincial Archives of Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism, Historical Resources Division.

- Ball, John. 1993. *Bibliography of Theatre History in Canada: The Beginnings Through 1984*. Toronto: ECW Press.
- Banski, Erika, Fern Russell. eds. 2001. *A Guide to the Alberta Folklore and Local History Collection*. Compiled by Joel MacKeen. Edmonton: University of Alberta Libraries.
- Barkwell, Lawrence, Leah Dorion and Darren R. Préfontaine. *Annotated Bibliography and References for Metis Researchers*. Accessed June 25, 2009 from: <http://www.mmf.mb.ca/publications/bibliography.for.metis.researchers.pdf>
- Bartlett, Mark C. 1993. *The History of the Book in Canada: A Bibliography*. Halifax, N.S. : B.H. MacDonald.
- Beaudoin, Alwynne B. 1989. *Annotated Bibliography: Late Quaternary Studies in Alberta's Western Corridor (1950-1988)* Edmonton: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism, Historical Resources Division, Archaeological Survey of Alberta.
- Bhatia, Mohan. 1971. *Canadian Provincial Government Publications: Bibliography of Bibliographies*. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
- . 1971. *Canadian Federal Government Publications: A Bibliography of Bibliographies*. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
- Boulton, Paul Co., comp. 1986. *A Central Alberta Bibliography*. Red Deer: Red Deer College Press.
- Brandson, Lorraine E. 1981. *From Tundra to Forest: A Chipewyan Resource Manual*. Winnipeg: Manitoba Museum of Man and Nature.
- Brink, J.W. and Dormaar, J.F. eds. 2003. *Archaeology in Alberta: A View from the New Millennium*. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta.
- Bruce, James P. 1968. *Water Resources Research in Canada*. Ottawa: Queen's Printer.
- Byfield, Ted. 1984. *The Atlas of Alberta: A Special Project of Alberta Report, The Weekly Newsmagazine* . Edmonton: Interwest Publications.
- . 1991-2003. *Alberta in the 20th Century: A Journalistic History of the Province*. 13 Vols. Edmonton, AB : History Book Pub.
- . 2006. *The Great West Before 1900*. Edmonton: CanMedia.
- Canada Communication Group. Publishing. 1990. *History and Archeology, Sociology*

- (including native people, ethnic groups and women). Ottawa: Canada Communication Group, Publishing.
- Canada. Dominion Bureau of Statistics. Diamond Jubilee of the Confederation of Canada. *Sixty Years of Canadian progress, 1867-1927*. Ottawa.
- Canada. Indian and Northern Affairs Branch. 1967. *Indians of the Prairie Provinces: An Historical Review*. Ottawa, Dept. of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian Affairs Branch.
- . 1977. *About Indians: A Listing of Books*. 4th Ed. Ottawa.
- . 2001. *In Their Footsteps: Contributions of First Nations People in Alberta*. Edmonton: Duval House Pub.
- Canada. National Library of Canada. 1985. *Books in Native Languages in the Rare Book Collection*. Ottawa.
- Canada. Multiculturalism Directorate. *History Projects Supported by Multiculturalism Canada*. Ottawa: Multiculturalism Canada.
- Canada. Solicitor General Canada. 1991. *Library catalogue of Aboriginal Resources*. Ottawa: Corrections Branch, Solicitor General Canada.
- Canadian Institute. 1914. *General Index to Publications, 1852-1912*. Toronto: University Press.
- Carter, Sarah. 1990. *Women's Studies: A Guide to Information Sources*. London: Mansell; Jefferson, N.C.: McFarland.
- Cavanaugh, Beverley. 1972. "Annotated Bibliography: Eskimo Music," *Ethnomusicology*, Vol. 16.
- Clair, Thomas A. 2000. *Climate change and ecosystem research in Canada's North: A Report to the Northern Ecosystem Initiative Management Team*. [Sackville, N.B.]: Environment Canada, Atlantic Region.
- Coates, Kenneth. 1996. *The Historiography of the Provincial Norths*. [Thunder Bay, Ont.?]: Centre for Northern Studies, Lakehead University.
- Conrad, Margaret and Alvin Finkel. *History of the Canadian Peoples. 5th Edition*. Toronto: Pearson Longman.
- Conrad, Margaret and Alvin Finkel. ed. 2008. *Foundations: Readings in Pre-Confederation Canadian History. 2nd Edition*. Toronto: Pearson Longman.

- Conrad, Margaret and Alvin Finkel. ed. 2008. *Nation and Society: Readings in Post-Confederation Canadian History*. 2nd ed. Toronto: Pearson Longman.
- Corbett, Bryan. 1992. *From the Past to the Future: A Guide to the Holdings of the University of Alberta Archives*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Archives.
- . 1996. *Guide to Native Sources at the University of Alberta Archives*. With contributions by Alan Contois, Erika Radenovich-Banski, Andrew Drummond. Edmonton: University of Alberta Archives.
- Corley, Nora Teresa. 1971. *A Selected Bibliography on the Peace and Athabasca Rivers and the Peace-Athabasca Delta Region*. Montreal: Arctic Institute of North America.
- Cottam, S. Barry. 1997. *Aboriginal Peoples and Archives: A Brief History of Aboriginal and European Relations in Canada*. Ottawa: National Archives of Canada.
- Dean, William G., Conrad Heidenreich, Thomas F. McIlwraith, and John Warkentin, eds. 1998. *The Concise Historical Atlas of Canada*. 3 Volumes. Geoffrey J. Matthews and Byron Moldofsky, Cartographers. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- De Brou, David and Bill Waiser. eds. 1992. *Documenting Canada: A History of Modern Canada in Documents*. Saskatoon, SK: Fifth House.
- Deer, A. Brian. 1977. *Concerning Indians in Canada Today: A Short List of Publications*. Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood.
- Dene Cultural Institute. 1989. *Dehcho : "Mom, we've been discovered!"*. Yellowknife, N.W.T.: Dene Cultural Institute.
- Documentary Heritage Society of Alberta. 1999. *Alberta, formerly a part of the North-West Territories : an index to birth, marriage and death registrations prior to 1900*. Edmonton: Documentary Heritage Society of Alberta.
- Dossick, Jesse J. 1986. *Doctoral research on Canada and Canadians, 1884-1983*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada.
- Dyer, Aldrich James. 1989. *Indian, Metis and Inuit of Canada in theses and Dissertations, 1892-1987*. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan.
- Environment Canada. 1987. *Canadian Sources of Environmental Information*. Ottawa: Environment Canada, Departmental Library.
- Environment Canada, Parks Services. 1990. *Research Publications Section, Research*

- Division, National Historic Parks and Sites Directorate, Parks Service, Environment Canada. Manuscript report series (discontinued). Ottawa: The Section. Ottawa: The Section.*
- Finkel, Alvin. 1986. *Winners and Losers: Canadian National Development, 1867-1900*. Athabasca, Alta.: Athabasca University.
- Fisher, Amy. 2002. *Native Residential Schools in Canada: A Selective Bibliography*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada.
- Fortier, Normand. 1993. *Guide to Oral History Collections in Canada*. Ottawa : Canadian Oral History Association.
- Francis, Flora Blizzard. 2000. *A Black Canadian Bibliography*. Ottawa: Pan-African Publications.
- Friesen, John W., and Terry Lusty. 1980. *The Métis of Canada: An Annotated Bibliography*. Toronto: Ontario Institute for Studies in Education.
- Fuller, William A. and G.H. La Roi. 1971. *Historical Review of Biological Resources of the Peace-Athabasca Delta*. Edmonton? : s.n.
- Gadacz, Rene R. 1984. *Thesis and Dissertation Titles and Abstracts on the Anthropology of Canadian Indians, Inuit and Metis from Canadian Universities*. Report 1, 1970-1982. National Museums of Canada. Mercury Series. Canadian Ethnology Service. Paper no. 95.
- Gard, Robert Edward. 1900. *Alberta Folklore and Local History Collection*. Alberta : s.n.
- Gerson, Carole. 2000? *Canada's Early Women Writers*. Burnaby, BC: C. Gerson.
- Govia, Francine, and Helen Lewis. 1988. *Blacks in Canada: In Search of the Promise*. A
Bibliographical Guide to the History of Blacks in Canada. Edmonton: Harambee Centres Canada.
- Griebel, Rosemary. 1986. *Landscapes: An Annotated Bibliography on the Natural History of Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Library Services.
- Guédon, Marie-Françoise. 1972. "Canadian Indian Ethnomusicology: Selected Bibliography and Discography," *Ethnomusicology*, Vol. 16, No. 3, Canadian Issue: 465-478.
- Hayes, Derek. 2006. *Historical Atlas of Canada: Canada's History Illustrated with Original Maps*. Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre; Seattle: University of Washington Press.

- Helm, June. 1973. *Subarctic Athapaskan Bibliography*. Iowa City, Iowa, Dept. of Anthropology, University of Iowa.
- . 1976. *The Indians of the Subarctic: a Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Henderson Directories. 1911-1929. *Henderson's Alberta Gazetteer and Directory*. Winnipeg: Henderson Directories.
- Holmberg, Robert. 1992. *Pulp Mills and the Environment: An Annotated Bibliography for Northern Alberta*. Athabasca, AB.: Athabasca University. PDF: <http://auspace.athabascau.ca:8080/dspace/bitstream/2149/1322/1/PulpMills.pdf>
- Holmgren, E.J., and P.M. Holmgren. 1976. *Over 2000 Place Names of Alberta*. 3rd ed. Western Producer Prairie Books, Saskatoon.
- Hudson, E. ed. 1997. *The Climate of the Peace, Athabasca and Slave River Basins*. Edmonton: The Study.
- Hunston, Jeff. 1991. *Prehistory of Canada: Recommended General Introductory Reading, 4th Edition*. Whitehorse: Heritage Branch, Dept. of Tourism, Govt. of the Yukon.
- Hippler, Arthur E. 1974. *The Subarctic Athabascans: A Selected Annotated Bibliography*. Fairbanks, Institute of Social, Economic, and Govt. Research, University of Alaska.
- Hudson's Bay Company Archives, Provincial Archives of Manitoba.
- Indian and Eskimo Affairs Program (Canada). Education Branch. 1975. *About Indians: A Listing of Books*. Ottawa: Information Canada.
- Ingles, Ernest Boyce. 1994. *Bibliography of Canadian Bibliographies*. 3rd Edition. Updated, Revised and Enlarged. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Isto, Sarah A. 1975. *Cultures in the North: Aleut, Athabaskan Indian, Eskimo, Haida Indian, Tlingit Indian, Tsimshian Indian: Multi-Media Resource List*. Fairbanks: Alaska Educational Program for Intercultural Communication, Center for Northern Educational Research, University of Alaska.
- Jackel, Susan. 1987. *Canadian Prairie Women's History: A Bibliographic Survey*. Ottawa: CRIAW/ICREF.
- Joseph, Gene. 1992. *Sharing The Knowledge: A First Nations Resource Guide*. Vancouver: Legal Services Society of British Columbia.

- Junne, George H. 2003. *The History of Blacks in Canada: A Selectively Annotated Bibliography*. Westport, CT: Greenwood Press.
- Karamitsanis, Aphrodite. 1991. *Place Names of Alberta*. Vol. I. *Mountains, Mountain Peaks, and Foothills*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Keeling, Richard. 1997. *North American Indian Music: A Guide to Published Sources and Selected Recordings, 1593-1995*. New York: Garland Pub.
- Kenefik, Sandra L. 1995. *A Review and Annotated Bibliography of Water and Fish Tainting in the Peace, Athabasca and Slave River Basins*. Edmonton: Northern River Basins Study.
- Krech III, Shepard. 1980. "Northern Athapaskan Ethnology: An Annotated Bibliography of Published Materials, 1970-1979," *Arctic Anthropology* Vo.17, No. 2: 68-105.
- . 1994. *Native Canadian Anthropology and History: A Selected Bibliography*. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.
- Krotki, Joanna E. 1980. *Local Histories of Alberta: An Annotated Bibliography*. Edmonton: University of Alberta and Central and East European Studies Society of Alberta.
- Kuehl, Warren F. 1965. *Dissertations in History: An Index to Dissertations completed in history departments of United States and Canadian Universities*. Lexington: University of Kentucky Press.
- Lamb, W. Kaye. 1971. *Canada's Five Centuries from Discovery to Present Day*. Toronto: McGraw-Hill
- Lande, Lawrence M. 1974. *A Checklist of Printed and Manuscript Material Relating to the Canadian Indian: Also Relating to the Pacific North West Coast*. Montreal: McGill University.
- Leslie, John and Ron Maguire. 1984. *The Historical Development of the Indian Act*. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Research Branch Corporate Policy, Indian and Northern Affairs Canada, 1978. 2nd ed. Previously published as: Miller, Kahn-Tineta. The historical development of the Indian Act, 1975.
- Lingewnfelter, Richard E. ed. 2003. *The Mining West: A Bibliography Guide to the History Literature of Mining in the American Canadian West*. 2 Vols. Lanham, MD: Scarecrow Press.

- MacDonald, Colin. 1967. *A Dictionary of Canadian Artists*. Ottawa: Candian Artists.
- Malinowski, Sharon. ed. 1998. *The Gale Encyclopedia of Native American Tribes*. Vol. 3. *Arctic, Subarctic, Great Plains, Plateau*. Detroit: Gale.
- Malinowski, Sharon. ed. 1995. *Notable Native Americans*. George H.J. Abrams, Consulting Editor & Author of Foreword. New York: Gale Research.
- Malinowski, Sharon and Simon Glickman. eds. 1996. *Native North American Biography*. New York: UXL.
- Marken, Jack W. 1973. *The Indians and Eskimos of North America: A Bibliography of books in print through 1972*. Vermillion, S. D.: Dakota Press.
- MacLean, John [1851-1928]. 1971. *Canadian Savage Folk: the Native Tribes of Canada*. Toronto: Coles Pub. Co.
- MacLaren, I.S. 2007. *Culturing Wilderness in Jasper National Park: Studies in Two Centuries of Human History in the Upper Athabasca River Watershed*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press. Illustrations, maps, bibliography, index.
- MacNeish, June Helen. 1976. *The Indians of the Subarctic: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Meiklejohn, Christopher. 1971. *Annotated bibliography of the Physical Anthropology and Human Biology of Canadian Eskimos and Indians*. Toronto: Dept. of Anthropology, University of Toronto.
- Melnyk, George. 1999. *The Literary History of Alberta*. 2 Vols. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Minion, Robin. 1985. *Partial Listing of Theses Related to Native Peoples*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta.
- . 1986. *Master's Theses: Northern Canada*. Edmonton, Alta.: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, the University of Alberta.
- . 1986. *Doctoral Dissertations: Northern Canada*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- . 1986. *Biographies: Canada*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- Mitchell, Elaine Allan. 1944. *The Canadian North: a Guide to Reading*. Ottawa: Canadian Legion Educational Services.

- Morey, Carl. 1997. *Music in Canada: A Research and Information Guide*. New York: Garland.
- Murdock, George Peter and Timothy J. O'Leary. 1975. *Ethnographic Bibliography of North America. With assistance of John Beierle [et al.]*. New Haven, Human Relations Area Files Press.
- Nichols Applied Management. 1996. *Factors Affecting Future Development in Key Economic Sectors in the Peace, Athabasca and Slave River Basins*. Edmonton: Northern River Basins Study.
- Northern River Basins Study (Canada). 1996. *NRBS: A Summary of Key Findings*. Edmonton.
- Oliver, E.H. 1914. *The Canadian North West: Its Early Development and Legislative Records*. 2 Vols. Ottawa: Government Printing Bureau.
- Orser, Charles E. Jr., ed. 2002. *Encyclopedia of Historical Archaeology*. New York: Routledge.
- Our future, Our Past, the Alberta Heritage Digitization Project*. 2001. *Alberta Law Collection*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Owens, Brian M. 1989. *A Guide to the Archives of the Oblates of Mary Immaculate, Province of Alberta-Saskatchewan*. Edmonton: Missionary Oblates, Grandin Province.
- Pannekoek, Frits. *A Selected Western Canada Historical Resources Bibliography to 1985*. Pp. 329-374.
<http://auspace.athabascau.ca:8080/dspace/bitstream/2149/76/4/f16.pdf>
- Parks Canada. 1974. *An Initial Bibliography of Wood Buffalo National Park*. Calgary: The Company.
- Parks Canada, ARC Branch, Planning Division. 1979. *Heritage Rivers Bibliography: Selected References from the ARC Branch, Parks Canada Card Index*. Document # 10793.
- Parks Canada. National Historic Parks and Sites Branch. 1982. *Bibliography, Manuscript Report Series Nos. 1-430: Unedited Manuscripts of the Parks Canada Research Divisions*. Hull, Québec: Parks Canada.
- Payne, Michael, Donald Wetherell, and Catherine Cavanaugh. 2006. *Alberta Formed, Alberta Transformed*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press; Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.

- Peel, Bruce Braden, Ernest Boyce Ingles and Norman Merrill Distad. 2003. *Peel's Bibliography of the Canadian Prairies to 1953*. 3rd Edition, illustrated, revised. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Perks, Robert. 1990. *Oral History: An Annotated Bibliography*. Foreword by Asa Briggsby Perks, Robert London: British Library National Sound Archive.
- Peters, Diane E. 2003. *Canadian Art and Architecture: An Annotated Bibliography of Theses and Dissertations*, Lanham, Md.: Scarecrow Press.
- Peters, Evelyn J. 1986. *Aboriginal Self-Government in Canada: A Bibliography 1986*. Kingston, ON: Institute of Intergovernmental Relations, Queen's University.
- Peterson, Tom. 2001. 'Wilcox Pass and 'Sheep Camp'.' Collection of references about the Upper Athabasca and Sunwapta River Region. Hinton: T. Peterson.
- Phillips, J., T. Loo, and S. Lewthwaite, eds. 1994. *Essays in the History of Canadian Law, Volume 5: Crime and Criminal Justice*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press and the Osgoode Society 1994.
- Post, Jennifer C. 2004. *Ethnomusicology: A Guide to Research*. New York; London: Routledge.
- Proctor, George A. 1979. *Sources in Canadian Music: A Bibliography of Bibliographies*. Sackville, N.B.: Ralph Pickard Bell Library, Mount Allison University.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 2006. *Aboriginal Archival Records at the Provincial Archives of Alberta: An Annotated Guide*. Edmonton: Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 2006. *An Administrative History of the Government of Alberta, 1905-2005*. Edmonton: Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 1989. *Alberta's Local Histories in the Historical Resources Library. 8th ed.* Edmonton: The Library.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 2006. *Francophone Archival Records at the Provincial Archives of Alberta: An Annotated Guide*. Edmonton: Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 1988. *Native Peoples of Alberta: A Bibliographic Guide*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism, Historical Resources Division.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 1974. *Index to records of the Anglican Diocese of*

- Athabasca preserved in the Provincial Archives of Alberta*. Edmonton: Dept. of Culture, Youth and Recreation.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 1977. *Women in Alberta*. Edmonton: Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Ridge, Alan D. 1984. *Alberta's Archives: Preserving our Documentary Heritage: A Survey of Major Alberta Archives Repositories and their Documentary Collections*. 2d edition, Revised and Enlarged.
- Rogers, Garry F. 1977. Bibliography of biogeographic theses, dissertations, and articles by U.S. and Canadians geographers: 1901-1975. Salt Lake City: Department of Geography, University of Utah.
- Roos, Arnold E. 1995. *A Bibliography of the History of Canadian Science and Technology*. Ottawa: Canadian Science and Technology Historical Association.
- Ryan, Helen. 1986. *Survey of Documents Available for Research in the Treaties and Historical Research Centre*. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre.
- Scace, Robert C. 1973. *Banff, Jasper, Kootenay and Yoho: An Initial Bibliography of the Contiguous Canadian Rocky Mountains National Parks*. Ottawa: Indian Affairs and Northern Development, National and Historic Parks Branch.
- Scace & Associates Ltd. 1974. *Wood Buffalo National Park, A Literature Review*. Calgary, Alta.: Scace & Associates Ltd.
- Shepard, Kretch III. 1994. *Native Canadian Anthropology and History: A Selected Bibliography*. Revised Edition. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press. Available as Electronic Resource.
- Shindruk, Cheryl. 1991. *Selected Sources on Aboriginal Issues*. Winnipeg: Institute of Urban Studies, University of Winnipeg.
- Smandych, Russell Charles. 1987. *Canadian Criminal Justice History: An Annotated Bibliography*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Smith, Dwight La Vern. 1983. *The History of Canada: An Annotated Bibliography*. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-Clio Information Services.
- Smith, Mary Margaret. 1988. *A Selected Bibliography of Historical Artifacts: c.1760-1920*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism, Historical Resources Division.
- Spector, David. 1977. "A Bibliographic Study of Field Agriculture in the Canadian Prairie West, 1870-1940," No. 46.

- . 1978. "An Annotated Bibliography for the Study of Animal Husbandry in the Canadian Prairie West 1880-1925, Part A," No. 77. (Sources available in Western Canada and United States).
- . 1978. "An Annotated Bibliography for the Study of Animal Husbandry in the Canadian Prairie West 1880-1925, Part B," No. 78. (Sources Available in Ottawa).
- Spry, Irene M. and Bennett McCardle. 1993. *The Records of the Department of the Interior and Research Concerning Canada's Western Frontier of Settlement*. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Stevenson, Marc and Clifford Hickey. 1995. *Empowering Northern and Native Communities for Social and Economic Control: An Annotated Bibliography*. Edmonton: Canadian Circumpolar Institute.
- Stevenson, Marc, et. al. 1995. *Environmental and Economic Issues in Fur Trapping: A Profile of Canada's Fur Trapping Industry and Variables Influencing its Sustainability: An Annotated Bibliography*. Edmonton: Canadian Circumpolar Institute.
- Stothers, David Marvyn. 1975. *A Bibliography of Arctic and Sub-Arctic Prehistory and Protohistory*. Toledo, Ohio: Toledo Area Aboriginal Research Club, University of Toledo.
- Strathern, Gloria M. 1982. *Alberta, 1954-1979: A Provincial Bibliography*. Edmonton: University of Alberta, Dept. of Print. Services.
- . 1988. *Alberta Newspapers 1880-1982: An Historical Directory*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Swyripa, Frances. 1985. *Oral Sources for Researching Ukrainian Canadians: A Survey of Interviews, Lectures and Programmes Recorded to December 1980*. Edmonton: Canadian Institute of Ukrainian Studies.
- University of Saskatchewan. Indian and Northern Education Program. 1972. *Annotated Bibliography of Articles Pertaining to Native North Americans*. Saskatoon: Indian and Northern Education Program.
- Verrall, Catherine, Patricia McDowell, and Lenore Keeshig-Tobias. 1990. *Annotated Bibliography of Resources By and About Native People*. Toronto: Canadian Alliance in Solidarity with the Native Peoples.
- Wagner, Anton. 2005. *A Preliminary Bibliography and Database of Canadian Theatre*

- Reviews 1900-1992* [electronic resource]. Fredericton, N.B.: University of New Brunswick.
- Wai, Lokky. 1989. *The Native Peoples of Canada in Contemporary Society: A Demographic and Socioeconomic Bibliography*. London: Population Studies Centre, University of Western Ontario.
- Wetherell, Donald and Irene R.A. Kmet 2000. *Alberta's North: A History, 1890–1950* Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- White, Phillip M. 2004. *Bibliography of Native American Bibliographies*.
- Whiteside, Don. 1973. *Aboriginal People: A Selected Bibliography Concerning Canada's First People*. Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood

Athabasca River Basin

- Abel, Peter M. 1972. *Diversion of the Athabasca, Smoky and Peace Rivers into the North Saskatchewan River*. M.Sc., The University of Manitoba.
- Alcock, F.J. 1920. "Past and Present Trade Routes to the Canadian Northwest," *The Geographical Review*, Vol. 10, no. 2: 57-83.
- . 1932. "Scow Brigade on the Athabasca," *Canadian Geographical Journal*: 97-107.
- Allen, Denis. 2004 (June). "The Pathfinders," *Up Here*: 54-60.
- Bailey, Patricia Gayle. 2003. *A Home in the Upper Athabasca Valley: The Aboriginal Homesteaders in the Nineteenth Century* M.A., Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Barris, Theodore. 1977. *Fire Canoe: Prairie Steamboat Days Revisited*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Beaudry, Ailie. 1998. "Lewis J. Swift and Family. Historical and Archaeological Evidence Pertaining to the First White Settler in the Upper Athabasca River Valley." Paper for Dr. Eric Higgs. Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Beaver Staff*. 1921. "How Smith's Landing Became FitzGerald," *The Beaver*, Vol. I, No. 4: 4.
- Bell, Robert. 1884. "Report on Part of the Basin of the Athabasca River, North-West Territories," *Geographical Survey of Canada Progress Report 1882-3*.

- . 1907. *The tar-sands of the Athabasca River*, Canada. Ottawa: American Institute of Mining Engineers.
- Black, Cherylee Margaret. 2004. *Physical Indicators of Ice-Jam-Induced Flooding and the History of Flood Frequency in Cores Taken from Lakes within the Peace-Athabasca Delta, Northern Alberta*. M.Sc., Winnipeg: University of Manitoba.
- Bowen, Lynn. 1999. "Elusive Treasure: Fortune Seeking in the Athabasca Tar Sands," *The Beaver*. Vol. 79, No. 1: 22-27.
- Bredin, William. F. 1971. "Far West and Far North," *Alberta Historical Review*: 8-21.
- Caldwell, C. J. 1979. *Perception of the Fort McMurray Environment Through Time*. [S.l.:s.n.].
- Cameron, Eion M., ed. 1983. *Uranium Exploration in Athabasca Basin, Saskatchewan, Canada*. Ottawa: Canada, Geological Survey: Canadian Govt. Pub. Centre.
- Campbell, Peter C. 2000. *Footprints in the Delta* [videorecording]. Montreal: National Film Board.
- Campbell, Sandra M. 2000. *Human Activity in the Upper Athabasca Valley* [electronic resource]. Edmonton, Alberta: University of Alberta.
- Canadian Heritage Rivers Board. 1999-1945. *The Athabasca River, Alberta (Jasper National Park)*. Ottawa: Canadian Heritage Rivers Board.
- Canuk, Janey (Emily Murphy). 1914. *Seeds of Pine*. Toronto: Hodder and Stoughton.
- The Champlain Society. 1938. "Journal of Occurrences in the Athabasca Department," *The Beaver*. Vol. 18, No. 3: 6-12.
- Chandler, Graham. 2007. "Athabasca's Archaeological Bounty," *Alberta Oil*, Vol. 3, No.2: 62-66.
- Chester, David W. 1977. *Athabasca: Exhibitions from the University Collections*. Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Christie, R. Morley. 1976. *Zoning in the Athabasca River Basin*. Edmonton, AB: Alberta Energy and Natural Resources, Forest Service.
- Coleman, A.P (1852-1939). 1894? *Mount Brown and the sources of the Athabasca* [microform]. S.l.: s.n.
- Conn, W.M. 1922. "Northern Steamer Ready," *The Beaver*. Vol. 2, No. 8: 11.

- Curwood, James Oliver. 1943. *The Valley of Silent Men: A Story of the Three River Country*. New York: Triangle Books.
- Denney, C. D. 1971. *The Athabasca Landing Trail*. Edmonton: C. D. Denney, 8315-105 St.
- Dyce, Matt. 2006. *A Souvenir from the North: Images, Narratives, and Power in the Athabasca-Mackenzie River Basin, 1882—1914*. M.A., Ottawa: Carleton University.
- Eight Horizons Historical Society. 1986. *From Out of the Wilderness: A History of Baptiste Lake, Deep Coulee, Forfar, Forfar East, Forfar West, Fraternity, Grosmont, Lahaieville, Lavert, South Athabasca, West Athabasca, and Winding Trail School Districts*. Athabasca, AB.
- Ells, S. C. 1939. "Athabasca River Transport," *Canadian Geographic Journal*: 50-52.
- . 1956. *Northland Trails*. Toronto: Burns and McEachern.
- Ens, Gerhard and B. Potyondi. 1986. *A History of the Upper Athabasca Valley in the Nineteenth Century*. Unpublished Manuscript.
- Footner, Hulbert. 1912. *New Rivers of the North: The Yarn of Two Amateur Explorers*. New York: Outing Publishing. Co.
- Gottfred, Jeff. 1996. "The Location of David Thompson's 'goods shed' on the Athabasca River," *Northwest Journal* 9: 7-14.
- Gregoire, Lisa. 2007. "River of Money: The Looming Energy Boom in the Mackenzie Delta/People of the Delta," *Canadian Geographic*: 42-60
- Gregory, David E. 1986. *Athabasca Landing: An Illustrated History: A Seventy-Fifth Anniversary Project*. Athabasca, AB: Athabasca Historical Society.
- Gregory, David E., ed. 1990. *The Athabasca Ryga*. Vancouver: Talonbooks.
- Haestie, Elizabeth. 1986. *Ferries and Ferrymen in Alberta*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- Hay, W. 1988. *Athabasca River Sand Hills integrated resource inventory and evaluations*. Edmonton: Alberta Forestry, Lands and Wildlife, Land Information Services Division.
- Hendy, Eileen & Weber, D. (eds.). 2000. *Athabasca Album: A Pictorial History 1875-1999*. Alberta: Quebecore Jasper Printing.
- Heron, R. P. 1981. *Athabasca Landing Trail and the Perryvale Centre for Heritage*

- Exploration: Interpretive Concept Plan*. Edmonton, AB: Heron/Seale & Associates.
- Holmberg, Robert. 1992. *Pulp Mills and the Environment: An Annotated Bibliography for Northern Alberta*. Athabasca, AB.: Athabasca University. PDF: <http://auspace.athabascau.ca:8080/dspace/bitstream/2149/1322/1/PulpMills.pdf>
- Howland, N.A. 1920. "'Skippering a Scow' on the Athabasca [River - Pt. 1]," *The Beaver*. Vol. I, No. 3: 16-17.
- . 1920. "'Skippering a Scow' on the Athabasca [River - Pt. 2]," *The Beaver*. Vol. I, No. 4: 22-23.
- . 1920. "'Skippering a Scow' on the Athabasca [River - Pt. 3]," *The Beaver*. Vol. 1, No. 5: 13-14.
- Hudson, E. ed. 1997. *The Climate of the Peace, Athabasca, and Slave River Basins*. Report No. 124. Northern River Basins Study, Edmonton, Alberta.
- Intierra Mapping. Northern Miner Press. 2007. *Athabasca Basin Mining and Exploration Activity [cartographic material]: Alberta, Saskatchewan, and Manitoba, Canada*. Toronto, ON: Intierra Mapping: Distributed jointly with The Northern Miner.
- Jubilee Celebration. 1961. *Athabasca Landing: Original Gateway to the North: 1911-1961*. Athabasca, AB: s.n. Echo Printing.
- Karklins, K. and R.S. Allen. 1983. *Nottingham House: The Hudson's Bay Company in Athabasca, 1802-1806*. Parks Canada. National Historic Parks and Sites Branch.
- Kenefik, Sandra L. 1995. *A Review and Annotated Bibliography of Water and Fish Tainting in the Peace, Athabasca and Slave River Basins*. Edmonton: Northern River Basins Study.
- Kindersley, Hugh. 1920 (October). "Into the Arctic Three Thousand Miles by Canoe Without Indian Guides," *The Beaver*. Vol. 1, No. 1. 14-15.
- Kucera, Richard E. 1973 [1972]. *Probing the Athabasca Glacier: Case History of a Glacier in the Columbia Icefield, Jasper National Park*. Vancouver: Evergreen.
- Laboucane, Ambrose J., 1979. *On the Banks of the Athabasca River As I Remember It: A True Account of Pioneering Fort McMurray, Alberta Through Personal Photos*. [s.n.]
- Lavender, David. 1977. *Winner Take All: The Trans-Canada Canoe Trail*. McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York.

- LeHaiye. 1813. *Diary of A Trip from Montreal to Lake Athabasca in 1811*. Paris.
Private Source. Note from Bruce Peel (1973): "The discovery and verification of this books remains a challenge."
- MacGregor, J.G. 1951 (Winter). "The Athabasca Trail," *New Trail*: 212-224.
- . 1974b. *Paddle Wheels to Bucket-Wheels on the Athabasca*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Mackay, W.C. ed., 1989. *Northern Lakes and Rivers*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- MacLaren, I.S. 2007. *Culturing Wilderness in Jasper National Park: Studies in Two Centuries of Human History in the Upper Athabasca River Watershed*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press. Illustrations, maps, bibliography, index.
- MacLean, Alistair. 1980. *Athabasca*. London: Collins.
- MacLock, R. Bruce and John P. Thompson. 2007. *A Hard Road to Travel: Land, Forests and People in the Upper Athabasca Region*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Bruce Peel Special Collections.
- Mair, Charles. 1908. *Through the Mackenzie Basin A Narrative of the Athabasca and Peace River Treaty Expedition of 1899*. Toronto: William Briggs.
- McConnell, R. G. 1893. Report on a portion of the District of Athabasca: comprising the country between Peace River and Athabasca River north of Lesser Slave Lake. Ottawa? : s.n., 1893 S.E. Dawson.
- Nicks, John. 1970. *Survey of Northern Rivers*. Manuscript on file at Provincial Museum and Archives of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Noel, Lynn E. ed. 1995. *Voyages: Canada's Heritage Rivers*. Newfoundland: Breakwater Books.
- Northern Heights Historical Society. 1994. *Reflections From Across the River: A History of the Area North of the Athabasca*. Athabasca, AB.
- Parker, James McPherson. 1976. "The Struggle for the Athabasca," In: *Essays on Western History, in Honour of Lewis Gwynne Thomas*. Edited by Lewis H. Thomas. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Patterson, Raymond M. 1960 (Winter). "We Clomb [sic] the Pathless Pass," *The Beaver*. Vol. 40, No. 3: 51-55.

- Patterson, R. M. 1968. *Finlay's River*. Toronto: Macmillan.
- Peace-Athabasca Delta Project Group. 1972. *The Peace-Athabasca Delta: Summary Report*.
- Peace-Athabasca Delta Project Group. 1972. *The Peace-Athabasca Delta: A Canadian Resource: a Report on Low Water Levels in Lake Athabasca and Their Effects on the Peace-Athabasca Delta*. Edmonton.
- Peace-Athabasca Delta (Status Report). 1983. Peace-Athabasca Delta Implementation Committee, Canada, Alberta, Saskatchewan.
- Pendleton, George. 1931. "HBC Posts, Mackenzie River-Athabasca District, No.1-Fort Edmonton," *The Beaver*. Vol. 10, No. 4: 179-182.
- . 1931. "HBC Posts, Mackenzie River-Athabasca District, No.2-Fort Chipewyan," *The Beaver*. Vol. 11, No. 1: 228-231.
- . 1931. "HBC Posts, Mackenzie River-Athabasca District, No. 3-Hudson Hope," *The Beaver*. Vol. 11, No. 2: 285-288.
- Peterson, Tom. 2001. "'Wilcox Pass and 'Sheep Camp'." Collection of references about the Upper Athabasca and Sunwapta River Region. Hinton: T. Peterson.
- Petitot, Émile. 1883. "On the Athabasca District of the Canadian North-West Territory," *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society and Monthly Record of Geography, New Monthly Series*, Vol. 5, No. 11: 633-655.
- . 1883. *Athabasca District N.W.T., 1883*. London: Royal Geographic Society.
- . 1875. "Memoire abrégé sur la géographie de l'Athabaskaw-Mackenzie." In *Missions de la congrégation des missionnaires Oblats de Marie Immaculée*, tome treizieme. Paris: A. Hennuyer: 23-248.
- . 1895. *Descente de la rivière Athabasca en canot d'écorce, en 1876*. Neuchatel: [Société neuchateloise de géographie].
- Preble, Edward Alexander. 1908. "A Biological Investigation of the Athabaska-Mackenzie Region." *United States Department of Agriculture, North American Fauna*, No. 27.
- Prest, John and Agnes Laut. 1921. "Discovery of the Athabasca Region by Samuel Hearne of HBC, 1769," *The Beaver*. Vol. 1, No. 9: 5-7.
- Reid, Audrey Weldon. 2003. *Athabasca Seasons: A Memoir*. Ste-Anne-de-Bellevue:

Shoreline.

Reinelt, E. R. (et al) Editorial Committee. 1971. *Proceedings of the Peace-Athabasca Delta Symposium*. Edmonton: University of Alberta.

Rich, Edwin Ernest. 1928. "Athabasca, 1938," *The Beaver*. Vol. 18, No. 3: 12-13.

Rich, Edwin Ernest, Ed. 1938. *Journal of Occurances in the Athabasca Department by George Simpson, 1820 and 1821, and Report*. Toronto: Champlain Society.

Roth, Clayton. 2005. *The Athabasca River [cartographic material]: Rocky Mountain Region, Jasper to Whitecourt*. Calgary: Watershed Guiding and Mapping.

Ryga, George. 1963. *Hungry Hills*. Toronto: Longmans.

———. 1966. *Ballad of a Stone-Picker*. Toronto: MacMillan.

———. 1974. *Hungry Hills: A Novel*. Alberta Heritage Edition. Vancouver: Talonbooks.

———. 2004. *The Prairie Novels*. Vancouver: Talonbooks.

———. 2004. *The Other Plays*. Vancouver: Talonbooks.

———. 2007. *The Ecstasy of Rita Joe*. Alexandria, VA: Alexander Street Press.

Schäffer, Mary T.S. 1908. Among the sources of the Saskatchewan and Athabasca Rivers. Reprinted from "The Bulletin of the Geographical Society of Philadelphia, Vol. 6, No. 2, April, 1908."

Schindler, David, William Donahue, and John Thompson. 2007. "Running Out of Steam? Oil Sands Development and Water Use in the Athabasca River-Watershed," Edmonton: University of Alberta, Environmental Research and Studies Center.

Service, Robert. 1953. "Athabasca Dick," *The Best of Robert Service*. Toronto: The Ryerson Press, 70-73.

Shore, Edna I. 1971. "The Athabasca Landing Trail." *Alberta Historical Review*.

Simpson, George, Sir. 1938. *Journal of occurrences in the Athabasca Department by George Simpson, 1820-1821, and report*. Edited by E. E. Rich. Toronto, The Champlain Society.

Sinclair, C.C. 1924. "Athabasca District," *The Beaver*. Vol. 4, No.9.

Sloan, W. A. 1979. "The Native Response to the Extension of the European Traders into

- the Athabasca and Mackenzie Basin, 1770–1814,” *Canadian Historical Review*, Vol. 60, No. 3: 281-299.
- Smith Half Century Plus Historical Book Committee. 1984. *Echoes Along the Athabasca River: A History of Chisholm, Fawcett Lake, Forest View, Hondo, Lawrence Lake, Moose Portage, Moose River, Otter Creek, Ranch, Smith, Smokey Creek*. Smith, AB: Smith Half Century Plus Historical Book Committee.
- Somerset, H. Somers. 1895. *The Land of the Muskeg*. London: Heineman.
- Sparling, James. 1986. *The Peace-Athabasca Delta a Description of the Resources and an Evaluation of Management Alternatives*. Winnipeg: The University of Manitoba.
- Stone, Donald Norman George. 1970. *The Process of Rural Settlement in the Athabasca Area, Alberta*. Thesis (M.A.) Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Thompson, D. 1799a. “Journey from Fort Augustus to the Forks of the Athabasca River. Manuscript, on file, Public Archives of Canada.
- . 1810-1812. “Journey from Boggy Hole on the Saskatchewan to the Athabasca River Oct. 29th 1810 to June 24th, 1812.” Unpublished Manuscript, on file, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary, 1812.
- Thompson, Ruby Trench. 1967. *Pioneers of Athabasca*. Edited by Raymond Thompson. R. Thompson Co.
- University of Alberta. 2001. “Culture, Ecology and Restoration Project: Exploring the Human History of the Upper Athabasca Valley. Farmsteads in the Upper Athabasca Valley.” CD ROM, Edmonton.
- Unknown. 1984. *Athabasca: The Geographic Centre of Alberta*. Athabasca, Ab.: s.n.
- Vyvyan, Clara Coltman Rogers, I. S. MacLaren and Lisa N. LaFramboise. 1998. *The ladies, the Gwich'in, and the Rat: Travels on the Athabasca, Mackenzie, Rat, Porcupine, and Yukon Rivers in 1926*. (Illustrated edition). Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Webber, George. 2003. "Affirming the Traditional: Three Days with the Athabasca Chipewyan Elders," *Legacy*, Vol. 8, No.2: 14-17.
- Wilson, Clifford. Ed. 1954. *Northern Treasury: Selections from the Beaver*. Toronto: T. Nelson.
- Wilson, J.A. 1985. *Geology of the Athabasca Group in Alberta*. Edmonton: Geological Survey Dept., Alberta Research Council.

- Woods, Gordon. 1982. *Social and Economic Assessment Study: Greater County of Athabasca: Program Report*. [S.l. : s.n.].
- Woynillawicz, Dan and Chris Severson-Baker. 2006. *Down to the Last Drop?: The Athabasca River and Oil Sands*. Drayton Valley: Pembina Institute.
- Wuetherick, Robert G. [1972?]. *A History of Fort Chipewyan and the Peace-Athabasca Delta Region*. [s.n.]
- WWF-Canada. 2009. *Canada's River's at Risk: Environmental Flows and Canada's Freshwater Future*. http://assets.wwf.ca/downloads/canadas_rivers_at_risk.pdf

Pre-History

- Carlson, R.L. 1983. "The Far West." In: *Early Man in the New World*, edited by R. Shutler, 73-96. Beverley Hills: Sage Publications Inc.
- Clark, Donald W., and Richard E. Moran. 1982. "Western Subarctic Prehistory: Twenty Years," *Canadian Journal of Archeology*, 6: 79-93.
- Helmer, James, S. VanDyke and F.J. Kense. eds. 1977. *Problems in the Prehistory of the North American Subarctic. The Athapaskan Question*. Calgary: University of Calgary Department of Archeology.
- Hoffecker, John F. A 2005. *Prehistory of the North: Human Settlement of the Higher Latitudes*. New Brunswick, NJ: Rutgers University Press.
- Hurt, W.R. 1966. "The Altithermal and the Prehistory of the Northern Plains," *Quaternaria* 8: 101-113.
- Ives, John W. 1989. *A Theory of Northern Athapaskan Prehistory*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- . 1993. "The Ten Thousand Years Before the Fur Trade in Northeastern Alberta," In: *The Uncovered Past: Roots of Northern Alberta Societies*. Edited by Patricia McCormack and Geoffrey Ironside. Circumpolar Research Series Number 3: 5-31.
- . 2006, 13,001 Years Ago—Human Beginnings in Alberta. In *Alberta Formed—Alberta Transformed*, edited by Michael Payne, Don Wetherell, and Catherine Cavanaugh, Volume 1, 1-34. Edmonton/Calgary: University of Alberta/University of Calgary Presses.
- Kehoe, Alice B. (n.d.) *Hunters of the Buried Years: The Prehistory of the Prairie*

- Provinces. Regina: School Aids and Text Book Publishers.
- Losey, Timothy C. 1978. *The Prehistoric Cultural Ecology of the Western Prairie-Forest Transition Zone, Alberta, Canada*. Ottawa. National Library of Canada.
- MacGowan, Kenneth and J. Hester. 1962. *Early Man in the New World*. Garden City, N.Y.: Natural History Library.
- Magne, Martin. 2001. "Plateau and Plains Athapaskan Movements in the Late Prehistoric and Early Historic Times: A View From the Middle," Paper Prepared for the 5 th. Biennial Rocky Mountain Anthropological Conference, Waterton Lakes National Park, Alberta, September 20-23.
- Mathews, W.H. 1980. *Retreat of the Last Ice Sheets in Northeastern British Columbia and Adjacent Alberta*. Ottawa: Energy, Mines and Resources Canada, Bulletin 331.
- McCullough, E.J. and M.C. Wilson. 1982. "A Prehistoric Settlement – Subsistence Model for Northeastern Alberta, Canstar Oil Sands Ltd. Bitumous Sands Leases 33, 92, and 95: A Preliminary Statement." *Canstar Oil Sands Ltd. Environmental Monograph, 1982-1*.
- McCullough, E. J. and B. O. K. Reeves. 1978. *Historical Resources Impact Assessment, Western Portion of Syncrude Lease no. 17, Alberta*. Edmonton: Syncrude Canada. [Note: Locates and Assesses Prehistoric Sites Between the Beaver and Mackay Rivers.](#)
- McGhee, Robert. 1972. 1985. "Prehistory." In: *The Canadian Encyclopedia*. Edited by James H. Marsh. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- . 1989. *Ancient Canada*. Ottawa: Canadian Museum of Civilization.
- Pielou, E. C. 1991. *After the Ice Age: The Return of Life to Glaciated North America*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Pickard, R. 1986. "An Archaeological Assessment of the Patricia Lakes Site in Jasper National Park." In *Eastern Slopes Prehistory: Selected Papers*. B. Ronaghan (ed.) Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Occ. Paper 30. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources.
- Reeves, Brian O.K. 1983. *Culture Change in the Northern Plains, 1000 B.C.-A.D. 1000*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources Division.
- Ronaghan, Brian M. 1986. *Eastern Slopes Prehistory: Selected Papers*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources Division.

- Russell, Dale E. 1977. *A Vanished World: The Dinosaurs of Western Canada*. Ottawa: National Museum of Natural Sciences.
- Vickers, Roderick. 1986. *Alberta Plains Prehistory*. Occasional Paper No. 27, Archaeological Survey of Alberta. Alberta Culture. Edmonton.
- . 1986. *Alberta Plains Prehistory: A Review*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture.
- Wilson, John and Ron Clowes. 2009. *Ghost Mountains and Vanished Oceans: North America From Birth to Middle Age*. Toronto: Key Porter Books Limited.
- Wilson, Michael C., and J.A. Burns. 1999. "Searching for the Earliest Canadians: Wide Corridors, Narrow Doorways, Small Windows," In: R. Bonnicksen and K.L. Turnmire (eds.) *Ice Age People of North America: Environments, Origins and Adaptations*. Oregon State University Press and Center for the Study of the First Americans, Corvallis, OR, 312-248.
- Wormington, Hannah Marie Forbis. 1957. *Ancient Man in North America*. 4th Edition. Denver, Colorado: Denver Museum of Natural History.
- Wright, J.V. 1975. *The Prehistory of Lake Athabasca: An Initial Statement*. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- . 1976. *Six Chapters of Canada's Prehistory*. Toronto: Van Nostrand Reinhold.
- . 1981. *Prehistory of the Canadian Shield*. In: Handbook of North American Indians, Vol. 6 (Subarctic), Edited by June Helm, pp. 86-97. Washington: Smithsonian Institution.
- . 1986. "Mapping Canada's Prehistory," *Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada*, 5th Series, I.

Archeological History

- Alberta. Historical Resources Division. 1978. *The Effects of Forestry Operations on the Historical Resource Base of Alberta*. Edmonton: Archaeological Survey of Alberta; Alberta Culture, Historical Resources Division.
- Anderson, Ross and B.O.K. Reeves. 1975. "Jasper National Park Archeological Inventory," No. 158.
- Beaudoin, A.B., M. Wright, and B. Ronaghan. 1996. "Late Quaternary Landscape History and Archeology in the 'Ice-free Corridor': Some Recent Results from Alberta." *Quaternary International* 32: 113-126.

- Beaudoin, Alwynne. 2003. Climate and Landscape of the Last 2000 Years in Alberta. In *Archaeology In: Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar, pp. 10-45. Medicine Hat: Archaeological Society of Alberta.
- Beaudoin, A.B., M. Wright, and B. Ronaghan. 1996. "Late Quaternary Landscape History and Archeology in the 'Ice-free Corridor': Some Recent Results from Alberta." *Quaternary International* 32: 113-126.
- Brink, Jack. 1981. "Rock Art Sites in Alberta: Retrospect and Prospect". In: *Alberta Archaeology: Prospect and Retrospect*. Edited by T.A. Moore, 69-82. Lethbridge: Archaeological Society of Alberta.
- . 1982. "Riverrun: An Appraisal of Contract Archaeology in Alberta," In: *Directions In Archaeology, A Question of Goals*, Edited by P.D. Francis and E. Poplin, pp. 37-46. Calgary: University of Calgary Archaeological Association.
- . 2002. *Applied Archaeology on the Canadian Plains*. The SAA Archaeological Record Vol. 2, No. 2: 17-20. [Reprinted in *Alberta Archaeological Review* No. 36: 17-20 (2002)].
- . 2005. "Searching for David Thompson," *Alberta Archaeological Review* No. 42: 15-19.
- Brink, Jack, and S. Baldwin. 1988. "The Highwood Site: A Pelican Lake Phase Burial from the Alberta Plains," *Canadian Journal of Archaeology*, 12: 109-136.
- Brink, John W. 1977. "Frost-heave and Archaeological Interpretation," *Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology* Vol. 7, No. 3: 61-73.
- Brink, J.W. and Dormaar, J.F., eds. 2003. *Archaeology in Alberta: A View from the New Millennium*. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta.
- Brumbach, Hetty Jo, Robert Jarvenpa, and Clifford Buell. 1982. "An Ethnoarchaeological Approach to Chipewyan Adaptations in the Late Fur Trade Period," *Arctic Anthropology* Vol. 19, No. 1:1-49.
- . 1989. *Ethnoarchaeological and Cultural Frontiers: Athapaskan, Algonquian, and European Adaptations in the Central Subarctic*. New York: P. Lang.
- Brumbach, Hetty Jo, Robert Jarvenpa, and Clifford Buell. 1982. "An Ethno - archaeological Approach to Chipewyan Adaptations in the Late Fur Trade Period," *Arctic Anthropology* Vol. 19, No.1:1-49.
- Burley, David. 1988. *Stability and Change in Western Canadian Metis Lifeways: An*

- Archaeological and Architectural Study*. Regina: University of Saskatchewan, Dept. of Archaeology and Anthropology.
- . 1991. *Structural Considerations of Métis Ethnicity: An Archaeological, Architectural, and Historical Study*. Vermillion, S.D. : University of South Dakota Press.
- Byrne, W.J., Comp. 1977. "Archeology in Alberta," No. 5
- Chandler, Graham. 2007. "Athabasca's Archaeological Bounty," *Alberta Oil*, Vol. 3, No.2: 62-66.
- Derry, David E., and Douglas R. Hudson. eds. 1975. "Special Issue: Athapaskan Archeology," *Western Canadian Journal of Archeology*, 5: 3-4.
- Donahue, Paul F. 1976. *Archaeological Research in Northern Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Research Division.
- Elliot, Jack. 1970-71. "Jasper National Park and Ya-Ha Tinda Ranch Archeological Survey," No. 44.
- Forbis, Richard George. 1970. "A Review of Alberta Archeology to 1964," *Publications in Archeology*, No. 1. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- Forsman, Michael R. A., and Joseph G. Gallo. 1979. "Approaches to Fur Trade Archaeology, Project 77-22 in Part," In *Archaeology in Alberta 1978*. Edited by J. M. Hillreud, pp. 159-185. Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Occasional Paper 1614. Edmonton: Alberta Culture Historical Resources Division.
- Getty, Ronald M. and Knut R. Fladmark. Eds. 1973. *Historical Archaeology in Northwestern North America*. Calgary: Archaeological Association.
- Gillespie, Beryl C. 1975. "Territorial Expansion of the Chipewyan in the 18th Century," In: *Proceedings: Northern Athapaskan Conference, 1971*. Edited by Annette McFayden Clark, 2: 350-388. Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 27. Ottawa: National Museum of Man.
- Gruhn, Ruth. 1981. *Archaeological Research at Calling Lake, Northern Alberta*. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- King, D.R. 1968. *Alberta Archeology: A Handbook for Amateurs*. High River: D.R. King.
- Klimko, Olga. 1994. *The Archaeology of Land Based Fur Trade Posts in Western Canada: A History and Critical Analysis*, Ph.D. Dissertation, Department of Archaeology, Simon Fraser University, Vancouver.

- Kooyman B. and J. H. Kelley. eds. 2004. *Archaeology on the Edge: New Perspectives From the Northern Plains*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Kornfeld, Marcel. 2003. *Affluent Foragers of the North American Plains: Landscape Archaeology of the Black Hills*. British Archaeological Reports Ltd.
- Kowal, Walt. 1992. *Archaeological Investigations at Historic Waterhole: Final Report*. Alberta: Provincial Museum of Alberta: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism Historical Resources Division.
- Le Blanc, Raymond. 2004. *Archaeological Research in the Lesser Slave Lake Region: A Contribution to the Pre-Contact History of the Boreal Forest of Alberta*. Gatineau, Québec: Canadian Museum of Civilization.
- Minion, Robin. 1985. *Archaeology in Northern Canada*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta
- Nicholas, George P. and Thomas D. Andrews. Eds. 1997. *At a Crossroads: Archaeology and First Peoples in Canada*. Burnaby, B.C.: Archaeology Press, SFU.
- Nicks, John. 1970. *Survey of Northern Rivers*. Manuscript on file at Provincial Museum and Archives of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Orser, Charles E. Jr., ed. 2002. *Encyclopedia of Historical Archaeology*. New York: Routledge.
- Paleo-environmental Workshop, 1st, University of Calgary. 1969. Post-Pleistocene man and his environment on the Northern Plains [Proceedings of the 1st annual Paleo-environmental Workshop of the University of Calgary Archaeological Association. Calgary, Students' Press.
- Peck, Trevor R. and Caroline R. Hudacek-Cuffe. 2003. "Archaeology on the Alberta Plains: The Last Two Thousand Years," In: *Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, Edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta. 72-103.
- Pickard, R. 1986. "An archaeological assessment of the Patricia Lakes site in Jasper National Park." In *Eastern Slopes Prehistory: Selected papers*. B. Ronaghan (ed.) Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Occ. Paper 30. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources.
- Proch, Douglas and Marc Stevenson. 1982. "Archeological Research in Wood Buffalo National Park, Alberta/N.W.T., 1980-82," *Alberta Archeological Review*, Vol. 5: 3-14.
- Pyszczyk, Heinz W. 1985. The Role of Material Culture in the Structure of Fur Trade

- Society. In: *Status, Structure and Stratification: Current Archaeological Reconstructions*, edited by M. Thompson, M.T. Garcia and F. Kense: 399-406. Calgary: The Archaeological Association of the University of Calgary.
- . 1996. *Archaeology Guide and Tour of Greater Edmonton Area*. Edmonton. The Provincial Museum of Alberta, Edmonton, and Strathcona Archaeological Society.
- Quigg, J. Michael. ed. 1976. *Archaeology in Alberta*. Edmonton, Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism, Historical Resources Division.
- Russell, Dale R. 1991. *Eighteenth-Century Western Cree and Their Neighbours*. Canadian Museum of Civilization, Mercury Series: Archaeological Survey of Canada Paper No. 143.
- Saxberg, Nancy and Brian O. K. Reeves. 2003. "The First 2000 Years of Oil Sands History: Ancient Hunters at the Northwest Outlet of Glacial Lake Agassiz," In: *Archaeology in Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, Edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta. 290-323.
- Snow, Elizabeth. 1975. "National Historic Parks and Sites Branch Salvage Archeology in 1975," No. 26.
- Snow, Elizabeth, et al. 1977. "National Historic Parks and Sites Branch Salvage Archeology in 1976," No. 42.
- Stevenson, Marc. 1981. "Preliminary Archeological Reconnaissance in Wood Buffalo National Park," No. 159.
- . 1981. "Peace Point—A Stratified Prehistoric Campsite Complex in Wood Buffalo National Park, AB. NO. 158.
- . 1982. "Archeological Assessment of the Peace Point Site, Wood Buffalo National Park, Alberta/N.W.T.: A Preliminary Report," No. 174.
- . 1983. *Scratching the Surface—Three Years of Archeological Investigation in Wood Buffalo Park, Alberta/N.W.T.—Preliminary Summary Report* No. 201.
- Vickers, J. Rod. 1986. *Alberta Plains Prehistory: A Review*. Archaeological Survey of Alberta. Occasional Paper No. 27. Edmonton: Alberta Culture.
- Walde, Dale and David Meyer, 2003, Pre-Contact Pottery in Alberta: An Overview. In:

- Archaeology in Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, Edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta. 132-152.
- Walker, E. G. 1992. "The Gowen Sites: Cultural Responses to Climatic Warming on the Northern Plains (7500-5000 B.P.)." Archaeological Survey of Canada Mercury Series Paper, Ottawa: Canadian Museum of Civilization.
- Wilson, Michael C., and J.A. Burns. 1999. "Searching for the Earliest Canadians: Wide Corridors, Narrow Doorways, Small Windows," In: R. Bonnicksen and K.L. Turnmire (eds.) *Ice Age People of North America: Environments, Origins and Adaptations*. Oregon State University Press and Center for the Study of the First Americans, Corvallis, OR, 312-248.
- Wormington, H.M. Forbis. 1965. *Introduction to the Archaeology of Alberta, Canada* Denver Museum of Natural History.
- Yellowhorn, Eldon. Before the Alberta Century. 2003. In: *Archaeology in Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, Edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta. 324-342.

Oral Traditions and Spoken History

- Carlson, Nathan D. 2009. "Reviving Witiko (Windigo): An Ethnohistory of "Cannibal Monsters" in the Athabasca District of Northern Alberta, 1878-1910," *Ethnohistory*, Vol. 56 Issue 3: 355-394.
- Crnkovich, Mary. 1990. *Gossip: A Spoken History of Women in the North*. Ottawa: Canadian Arctic Resources Committee.
- Cruikshank, Julie. 1988a. "Myth and Tradition as Narrative Framework: Oral Histories From Northern Canada," *International Journal of Oral History*, 9: 198-214.
- . 1988b. "Telling about Culture: Changing Traditions in Subarctic Anthropology," *Northern Review*, 1: 27-40.
- . 1990. "Getting the Words Right: Perspectives on Naming and Places in Athapaskan Oral History," *Arctic Anthropology*, Vol. 27, No. 1: 52-65.
- . 2001. "Glaciers and Climate Change: Perspectives from Oral Tradition," *Arctic* 54, No. 4: 377-393.
- Dene Cultural Institute. 1989. *Dehcho : "Mom, we've been discovered!"*. Yellowknife, N.W.T.: Dene Cultural Institute.

- Fortier, Normand. 1993. *Guide to Oral History Collections in Canada*. Ottawa : Canadian Oral History Association.
- Kolson, Bren. 1994. "Michif: How Generations Lost the Language," *The Métis Voice*, Vol. 1, No. 1: 23.
- Lanteigne, Raymond. 1983. *Voix Albertaines: supplément français à Voices of Alberta: a survey of oral history completed in Alberta up to 1980*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources Division.
- Norman, Howard A. 1990. *Northern Tales: Traditional Stories of Eskimo and Indian Peoples*. New York: Pantheon Books.
- Parker, J. M. and K.W. Tingley. 1980. *History of the Athabasca Oil Sands Region, 1890 to 1960's. Vol. 2: Oral History*. Alberta Oil Sands Environmental Research Program. Edmonton: Alberta Environment.
- Perks, Robert. 1990. *Oral History: An Annotated Bibliography*. Foreword by Asa Briggsby Perks, Robert London: British Library National Sound Archive.
- Standing Alone, Pete and Chumak, Sebastian. 1994. *The Wisdom of the Cree of Canada: A Book of Healing for the Human Heart*. Calgary, AB: The Alberta Foundation.
- Swyripa, Frances. 1985. *Oral Sources for Researching Ukrainian Canadians: A Survey of Interviews, Lectures and Programmes Recorded to December 1980*. Edmonton: Canadian Institute of Ukrainian Studies.

Women's History

- Aubrey, Merrily K. 1989. *Sources for Women's History at the Provincial Archives of Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism, Historical Resources Division.
- Backhouse, Frances. 1995. *Women of the Klondike*. Vancouver: Whitecap Books.
- Bataille, Gretchen M., ed., 1993. *Native American Women: A Biographical Dictionary*. New York: Garland Publishing.
- Cameron, Agnes Deans. 1910. *The New North: Being Some Account of a Woman's Journey Through Canada to the Arctic* (with many illustrations from photographs by the author). New York; London: D. Appleton and Co.
- Carter, Sarah. 1990. *Women's Studies: A Guide to Information Sources*. London: Mansell; Jefferson, N.C.: McFarland.

- . 1997. *Capturing Women: The Manipulation of Cultural Imagery in Canada's Prairie West*. Montreal [Que.] : McGill-Queen's University Press.
- . 2005. *Unsettled Pasts: Reconceiving The West Through Women's History*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- . 2008. *The Importance of Being Monogamous: Marriage and Nation Building in Western Canada to 1915*. 1st Edition. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Crnkovich, Mary. 1990. *Gossip: A Spoken History of Women in the North*. Ottawa: Canadian Arctic Resources Committee.
- Duncan, Jennifer. 2004. *Frontier Spirit: The Brave Women of the Klondike*. Anchor Canada Edition. Toronto: Anchor Canada.
- Historical Society of Alberta. 1994? *Who's Who in Alberta, 1994-1998: A Biographical Record of the Men and Women of our Time*. Vancouver, B.C. : B & C List.
- Hoskin, Katharine E. E. 1974. *I Remember Peace River, Alberta and Adjacent Districts*. Women's Institute of Peace River, Alberta.
- Jackel, Susan. 1987. *Canadian Prairie Women's History: A Bibliographic Survey*. Ottawa: CRIAW/ICREF.
- Jameson, Elizabeth and Sheila McManus. eds. 2008. *One Step Over the Line: Toward a History of Women in the North American Wests*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press, Athabasca University Press.
- Kelcey, Barbara Eileen. 2001. *Alone in Silence: European Women in the Canadian North Before 1940*. Montréal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Kelcey, Barbara Eileen and Angela E. Davis. 1997. *A Great Movement Underway: Women and The Grain Growers' Guide, 1908-1928*. Winnipeg: Manitoba Record Society.
- Merritt, Susan E. 1993. *Her Story: Women from Canada's Past*. St. Catharines: Vanwell Publishing Limited.
- Noel, Lynn, 1999 "Women of the Fur Trade Era," in Sue Engebretson & Becky Barry, *The Voyageurettes*, Adventure Publications, MN.
- O'Donnell, Cynthia Nelles, 2000. *Alberta Women in the Field: Geoscientists in the Resource Industry, Government Research, and Academia, 1914—1999*. Ed.D., University of Toronto.

- O'Meara, Walter, 1968. *Daughters of the Country: The Women of the Fur Traders and Mountain Men*. Toronto: Harcourt Brace.
- Pioneers of Sunrise and Two Rivers. 1980. Fort St. John, B.C.: Sunrise-Two Rivers Women's Institute.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 1977. *Women in Alberta*. Edmonton: Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Rasmussen, Linda, et al. 1976. *A Harvest Yet to Reap: A History of Prairie Women*. Toronto: Women's Press.
- Reineberg Holt, Faye. 2000. *Sharing the Good Times: A History of Prairie Women's Joys and Pleasures*. Calgary: Detselig Enterprises.
- Rennie, Bradford James, 1999. *The United Farmers and Farm Women of Alberta: The Development of a Movement, 1909-1921*. Ph.D., University of Victoria.
- Rude, Darlene. 2004. *From the Fur Trade to Free Trade [electronic resource]: Forestry and First Nations Women in Canada*. Ottawa, ON: Status of Women Canada.
- Strong-Boag, Veronica and Anita Clair Fellman, ed. 1991. *Rethinking Canada: The Promise of Women's History*. Toronto: Copp Clark Pitman Ltd.
- Van Kirk, S. 1980. "Many Tender Ties:" *Women in Fur Trade Society, 1670-1812*. Winnipeg: Watson & Owyer Publishing Ltd.
- . 1984. "The Role of Native Women in the Fur Trade Society of Western Canada, 1670-1830," *Frontiers: A Journal of Women Studies*, Vol. 7, No. 3: 9-13.
- Vyvyan, Clara Coltman Rogers, I. S. MacLaren and Lisa N. LaFramboise. 1998. *The Ladies, the Gwich'in, and the Rat: Travels on the Athabasca, Mackenzie, Rat, Porcupine, and Yukon Rivers in 1926*. (Illustrated edition). Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- White, Bruce. M. 1999. "The Woman Who Married a Beaver: Trade Patterns and Gender Roles in the Ojibwa Fur Trade," *Ethnohistory* Vol. 46, No. 1: 109-147.
- Wilson, Kathryn, J. 1980. *Feminine Fur Trade Fashions: 1800-1840*. Chadron, Neb.: The Fur Press.

Religion, Missionary History and the Church

- Anglican Diocese of Athabaska. 1949. "Seventy- Fifth Anniversary of the Diocese of Athabasca, Church of England in Canada, 1874-1949. N.1.: Diocese of Athabaska
- Anonymous. 1876. "Rapport du P. Leduc, Saint-Albert, Le Lac Labiche." *Missions de la Congregation Des Missionnaires Oblats de Marie Imaculée*. Paris. A. Hennuyer: 411-434.
- Boon, T.C.B. 1962. *The Anglican Church*. Toronto: Ryerson.
- Brandak, George Michael. 1972. *A Study of Missionary Activity in the Diocese of Athabasca, 1884-1903*. Thesis (M.A.)--Waterloo Lutheran University.
- Breton, Rev. Paul E. 1955. *Big Chief of the Prairies: Life of Father Lacombe*. Edmonton: Palm Press.
- Breynat, Gabriel, Mgr. 1955. *The Flying Bishop: Fifty Years in the Canadian North*. London: Burns and Oates.
- Brick, A.L. "Rev. J. Gough and His Shaftesbury Mission Farm," *Alberta Historical Review*: 3-12.
- Castonguay, Therese. 1999. *A Leap in Faith: The Grey Nuns Ministries in Western and Northern Canada*. Edmonton: The Grey Nuns of Alberta.
- Chalmers, John West.1983 (Winter). "Missions and Schools in the Athabaska." *Alberta History*.
- Chittended, H.M. and A.T. Richardson. 1905. *Life, Letters and Travels of Father Pierre-Jean De Smet, 1801-1873*. Vol. 1. New York: Francis P. Harper.
- Collignon, D. 1873. Unpublished Letter, June 16, 1873, on file, Oblate Private Archives, McClennan, Alberta.
- De Smet, Pierre-Jean. 1906. *Oregon Missions and Travel in the Far Northwest, 1839-1846*. Vol. II Edited by Ruben Gold Thwaites. Cleveland: A.H. Clark.
- Duchaussois, Pierre Jean Baptiste. 1919. *The Grey Nuns in the Far North (1867-1917)*. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart.
- . 1937. *Mid Snow and Ice: The Apostles of the North-West*. New Ed. Ottawa: Ottawa University.

- Faraud, H. 1976. 1879-1890. "Journal." Unpublished Manuscript, on file, Oblate Private Archives, McClennan, Alberta.
- Fast, Vera Kathryn. 1979. *Missionary on Wheels: Eva Hasell and the Sunday Schools Caravan Mission*. Toronto: Anglican Book Centre.
- Garrioch, Reverend A. 1929. *A Hatchet Mark in Duplicate*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- Grouard, mgr. 1922. *Souvenirs de mes soixante ans d'apostolat dans l'Athabaska-Mackenzie*. Lyon : Oeuvre Apostolique de M.I.; Winnipeg : "La Liberté".
- Hochbaum, H. Albert. 1977 (Winter). "Arctic Steeples," *The Beaver*. 28-35.
- Holmes, Mrs. Robert. 1964. "Experiences of a Missionaries Wife," *Alberta Historical Review*: 18-25.
- Hoskin, Derek. 1992. *History of the Anglican Diocese of Athabasca*. Archdeacon Derek Hoskin. [s.n.]
- Huel, Raymond. 1996. *Proclaiming the Gospel to the Indians and the Métis*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Labissoniere, Sister Jean. 1978. *Providence Trail Blazers*. Edmonton: Sisters of Providence.
- Legal, E.J. 1914. *Short Sketches of the Roman Catholic Churches and Missions in Central Alberta*. Winnipeg: West Canada Publishing.
- Levasseur, Donat. 1995. *Les Oblats de Marie Immaculée dans l'Ouest et le Nord du Canada, 1845-1967: esquisse historique*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- McCarthy, Martha. 1995. *From the Great River to the Ends of the Earth: Oblate Missions to the Dene, 1847-1921*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press & Western Canadian Publishers.
- McCrum, Elizabeth. 1976. *A Register of Service: The Centennial History of the Anglican Diocese of Athabasca*. [s.l.] : Diocese of Athabasca, 1976. Valley Printer.
- MacLean, John. 1927. *McDougall of Alberta: A Life of Rev. John McDougall*. Toronto: Ryerson.
- MacGregor, J.G. 1975. *Father Lacombe*. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- Minion, Robin. 1985. *Religions of the Circumpolar North*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.

- Morice, A.G. 1910. *History of the Catholic Church in Western Canada*. 2 Vols. London: Toronto. Musson Book Co.
- Oakwell, Mary. 2006. *Many Foundations: Historic Churches of Alberta*. Edmonton, Alta.: Brindle & Glass.
- Owens, Brian M. 1989. *A Guide to the Archives of the Oblates of Mary Immaculate, Province of Alberta-Saskatchewan*. Edmonton: Missionary Oblates, Grandin Province.
- Peake, Frank A. 1965. "Church and Society During the Klondike Gold Rush," *Historical Magazine of the Protestant Episcopal Church*, Vol. 34.
- Petitot, Émile. 1875. "Memoire abrégé sur la géographie de l'Athabaskaw-Mackenzie." In *Missions de la congregation des missionnaires Oblats de Marie Immaculee*, tome treizieme. Paris: A. Hennuyer: 23-248.
- Philpott, A. (n.d.) "Mission de Notre-dame Des Victoires au Lac La Biche, Alberta." Unpublished manuscript, Oblate Private Archives, McClennan, Alberta.
- Priestley, Norman F. 1967. *Furrows, Faith and Fellowship*. Edmonton, Alberta Agricultural Centennial Committee.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 1974. *Index to records of the Anglican Diocese of Athabasca preserved in the Provincial Archives of Alberta*. Edmonton: Dept. of Culture, Youth and Recreation.
- St. Paul's United Church. 1964. "50th Anniversary, 1914-1964." Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Simonson, Gayle. 1988. "The Prayer Man: Ojibwa Henry Bird Steinhauer Brought Religion to the Cree," *The Beaver*. Vol. 68, No. 5: 28-33.
- Turcotte, J. A. 1985. *Memoirs of a Jubelarian, 1924-1974*. Fort McMurray: Fort McMurray Catholic Board of Education.
- United Church of Canada. Westlock and District Pastoral Charge. 1975. *The First Fifty Years*. s.l.: Westlock and District Pastoral Charge.
- Waugh, Earle H. 1996. *Dissonant Worlds: Roger Vandersteene Among the Cree*. Waterloo, ON: Wilfrid Laurier University Press.
- Woodsworth, J.S. 1972. *Strangers Within Our Gates*. Introduction by Marilyn Barber. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Northern Alberta

- Abel, Kerry and Ken S. Coates, eds. 2001. *Northern Visions: New Perspectives on the North in Canadian History*. Peterborough, Ont.: Broadview Press.
- Adam, Mercer G. 1885. *The Canadian North West*. Toronto: Rose Publishing.
- Adams, Stuart. 1998. *Fort Chipewyan: Way of Life Study. Summary Report*. Vancouver: Stuart Adams & Associates.
- Ahlf, Marguerite. 1986. *Edson: 75 Years-A History of the Town*. Winnipeg: Jostens Publishing.
- Alberta Genealogical Society. Edmonton Branch. 1995. *Alberta, formerly the Northwest Territories, Index to Registration of Births, Marriages and Deaths, 1870 to 1905*. Edmonton: The Society.
- . Edmonton Branch. 1999. *Index to the 1901 Census: District of Alberta (no. 202)*. Edmonton: Alberta Genealogical Society, Edmonton Branch.
- The Alberta Golden Jubilee Anthology*. 1955. Edmonton: McClelland and Stewart.
- Allen, Richard. ed. 1973. *A Region of the Mind: Interpreting the Western Canadian Plains*. Regina: Canadian Plains Studies Centre, University of Saskatchewan.
- Allen, Robert. 1983. "Peter Fidler and Nottingham House, Lake Athabasca 1802-1806," No. 69.
- Allen, W.G.P. 1972. *The Trail Through the Pembina Valley, 1790-1912*. Barrhead, AB.
- Aubrey, Merrily K. 1996. *Place Names of Alberta*. Vol. IV. *Northern Alberta*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- . 2005. *Pioneering with a Piece of Chalk: The One-Room Country Schools of Alberta, 1885-1982*. Stettler, AB : W.P. Baergen.
- Basque, Garnet. 1999. *Lost Bonanzas of Western Canada*. Surrey, BC: Heritage House.
- Beaver Staff*. 1921. "How Smith's Landing Became FitzGerald," *The Beaver*, Vol. I, No. 4: 4.
- Begg, Alexander. 1894. *History of the North West*. 3 Vols. Toronto: Hunter, Rose.
- Belanger, P.R.A. 1889. "Field Notes of the Survey of the Settlement of Lac La Biche North-West Territories." Record No. 4933, on file, Provincial Archives of Alberta.

- . 1890. Survey of Trails and Settlements at Lake Ste Anne and Lac La Biche. *Annual Report of the Department of the Interior for the Year 1889*. Ottawa.
- Bercuson, David Jay. 1973. *Western Perspectives: 1 (formerly Prairie perspectives); Papers of the Western Canadian Studies Conference, 1973*. Toronto: Holt, Rinehart and Winston of Canada.
- . 1984. *Settling the Canadian West*. Toronto: Grolier.
- Bernsohn, Ken. (n.d.) *Cutting Up the North*. North Vancouver: Hancock House.
- Berton, Pierre. 1949. "Edmonton: A Boom at the Crossroads," *Maclean's*, 15 July.
- . 1970. *The National Dream: The Great Railway 1871-1881*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- . 1971. *The Last Spike: The Great Railway 1881-1885*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- . 1978. *The Wild Frontier: More Tales from the Remarkable Past*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- . 1984. *The Promised Land: Settling the West 1896-1914*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- . 2004. *Prisoners of the North*. New York: Carroll & Graf.
- Blackburn, John H. and John Archer. 1970. *Land of Promise*. Toronto: Macmillan.
- Blue, John. Ed. 1924. *Alberta Past and Present, Historical and Biographical*. 3 Vols. Chicago: Pioneer Historical Publishing Company.
- Boam, Henry J. 1914. *The Prairie Provinces of Canada: Their History, People, Commerce, Industries, and resources*. London: Sells.
- Boddy, Trevor. ed. 1980. *Prairie Architecture: A Special Issue Of Prairie Forum*. Vol 5, No 2. Regina, Saskatchewan: Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Bohi, Charles W. 1977. *Canadian National's Western Depots: The Country Stations in Western Canada*. Don Mills, ON: Fitzhenry & Whiteside.
- Borgstede, A. 1985. *The Black Robés Vision. A History of St. Albert District*. St. Albert Historical Society.
- Boyle and District Historical Society. 1982. *Forests, Furrows and Faith: A History of*

- Boyle and Districts*. Boyle, AB: The Society.
- Brady, Archange J. 1985. *A History of Fort Chipewyan: Alberta's Oldest Continuously Inhabited Settlement*. 2nd Edition. Athabasca, Alberta: Gregorach Printing.
- Bredin, William. F. 1971. "Far West and Far North," *Alberta Historical Review*: 8-21.
- Brennan, Brian. 2003. "The Mystery of the Canadian Himalayas." *Alberta History* 51.4
- Brown, Harriet C. 1979. *Beaver Tales: History of Ryley & District*. Ryley, Alta.: Ladies' Auxiliary Royal Canadian Legion, Ryley Branch No.
- Buzak, Dean, Diana Bodnar and Jim Pasnak. 1977. "Alberta, Alberta, Tomorrow Remembers Her Heritage," *Heritage Canada* Vol. 3, No. 4: 32-35.
- Byfield, Ted. 1984. *The Atlas of Alberta: A Special Project of Alberta Report*, The Weekly Newsmagazine . Edmonton: Interwest Publications.
- . 1991-2003. *Alberta in the 20th Century: A Journalistic History of the Province*. 13 Vols. Edmonton, AB : History Book Pub.
- . 2006. *The Great West Before 1900*. Edmonton: CanMedia.
- Caldwell, C. J. 1979. *Perception of the Fort McMurray Environment Through Time*. [S.l. :s.n.].
- Callihoo, Victoria. 1970. "Early Life in Lac St. Anne and St. Albert in the 1870's," *The Pioneer West*, No. 2: 7-10.
- Cameron, W.B. 1976. "Blood Red the Sun." In: *The Frog Lake "Massacre."* Edited by S. Hughes: 5-158. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart Limited.
- Caragata, Warren. 1979. *Alberta Labour: A Heritage Untold*. Toronto: Lorimer.
- Chalmers, John West. ed. 1971. *On the Edge of the Shield. Fort Chipewyan and its Hinterland*. Edmonton: The Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta, Occasional Papers, No. 7.
- Chipman, Warwick Fielding. *The Amber Valley: Poems*. Toronto: S.B. Gundy.
- Chipeniuk, R.C. 1975. *Lakes of the Lac La Biche District*. Lac La Biche: R.C. Chipeniuk.
- . 1975. *Lac La Biche, Yesterday and Today*. Lac La Biche, Alberta. Lac La Biche Heritage Society.
- Chumak, Sebastian and Nelson, Kenneth. 1978. *The Spirit of Alberta: An Illustrated*

- Heritage*. Special limited Edition. Edmonton: Alberta Heritage Foundation.
- Clyde History Book Committee. 2000. *Clyde: A Place to Call Home*. Friesens
- Coates, Ken and William Morrison. 1992. *The Forgotten North: A History of Canada's Provincial Norths*. Toronto: James Lorimer and Company.
- Coates, Kenneth S. and William R. Morrison, eds. 1989. *Interpreting Canada's North: Selected Readings*. Toronto: Copp Clarke Pitman.
- . 1989. *For the Purposes of Dominion: Essays in Honour of Morris Zaslow*. Toronto: Captus Press.
- Colinton History Book Club. 1984. *Colinton & Districts: Yesterday and Today*. Colinton, Alberta: Colinton History Book Club.
- Colley, Kate. 1970. *While Rivers Flow: Stories of Early Alberta*. Saskatoon: Western Producer-Prairie Books.
- Comfort, D. J. 1973-74. *Meeting Place of Many Waters: A History of Fort McMurray*. Fort McMurray, AB: Comfort Enterprises.
- . 1974. *Ribbon of Water and Steamboats North: A History of Fort McMurray, 1870-1898*.
- . 1975 (Autumn). "William McMurray: The Name Behind the Fort," *Alberta History*.
- . 1975. *Pass the McMurray Salt Please! the Alberta Salt Company as Remembered by three Fort McMurray Pioneers*. Fort McMurray, Alt., Fort McMurray Public Library.
- . 1980. *The Abasand Fiasco: The Rise and Fall of a Brave Pioneer Oil Sands Extraction Plant*. Edmonton: Friesen Printers.
- . *Collection 1972-1982*. Accession no. 84-25. University of Alberta Archives.
- Coutu, Phillip R. and Lorraine D. Hoffman-Mercredi. 1999. *Inkonze: The Stones of Traditional Knowledge: A History of Northeastern Alberta*. 1st Edition. Edmonton: Thunderwoman Ethnographics.
- . 2002. *Inkonze: The Stones of Traditional Knowledge: A Story of the Athabasca Tar Sands*. 2nd Edition. Edmonton: Thunderwoman Ethnographics.
- Crossley, D.I. 1983-1984. "We did it our way." Interviews with Desmond I. Crossley by

- Peter J. Murphy and James M. Parker at Hinton and Edmonton. Edmonton: University of Alberta Archives.
- Dapp and District Reunion. 1982. *Wheels of Progress: A History of Dapp and Districts*. Dapp, Alta.: Dapp and District Reunion.
- Davis, Gail. 1985 (July 30th). "Amber Valley: A Proud People, A Proud Community," *Athabasca Advocate*: 11-20.
- Dawson, Carl A. 1936. *Group Settlement: Ethnic Communities in Western Canada*. Toronto: Macmillan of Canada.
- . ed. 1947. *The New North-West*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Dawson, Carl A. and Eva R. Younge. 1940. *Pioneering in the Prairie Provinces: The Social Side of the Settlement Process*. Toronto: Macmillan Company of Canada.
- Dempsey, Hugh A. 1952. *Historic Sites of the Province Alberta*. Edmonton, AB. Department of Economic Affairs.
- . 1957. *The Early West*. Edmonton: Historical Society of Alberta.
- . 1969. *Indian Names for Alberta Communities*. Calgary: Glenbow-Alberta Institute.
- . 1970. *Historic Sites Alberta. Edmonton: Alberta Government Travel Bureau*. Edmonton: Alberta Government Travel Bureau.
- . 1973. "A History of Rocky Mountain House," No. 6.
- . 1981. *The Best from Alberta History*. Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Books.
- . 2008. "The State of the Edmonton District in 1815," *Alberta History*, Vol. 56 No.2
- Denny, Cecil. 1967 (Summer). "Trail to the Yukon," *Alberta Historical Review*.
- Department of Indian and Northern Affairs. 1972. *Investigation of the Clearwater as a Possible Wild River, National or Historic Park*. Ottawa: Wild Rivers Survey, National and Historic Parks Branch.
- Doll, Maurice F. V., Robert S. Kidd, and John P. Day. 1988. *The Buffalo Lake Métis Site: A Late Nineteenth Century Settlement in the Parkland of Central Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism.

- Drouin, E.O. (OMI). 1965. "St Paul des Métis," *Alberta Historical Review*: Vol. 11, No. 4: 12-14.
- . 1973. "Lac Ste-Anne Sakahigan." In: 1982. *Spirit and Trails of Lac Ste. Anne*. Edited by Vi Davison. The Alberta Beach and District Pioneers and Archives Society. Alberta Beach, AB.
- Emery, George J. 1970. *The Negro settlers of Amber Valley*. Edmonton: University of Alberta, Dept. of Anthropology.
- Engstrom, E. 1984. *Clearwater Winter*. Edmonton: Lone Pine Press.
- Faraud, H. 1976. Mgr. Henri Faraud, O.M.I. to Fr. Joseph Fabre, O.M.I. In *Frog Lake "Massacre,"* Edited by S. Hughes, Pp. 328-336. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart Limited.
- Farrow, Moira. 1975. *Nobody Here But Us: Pioneers of the North*. Vancouver: J.J. Douglas.
- Flanagan, Thomas. 1990. *Some Factors Bearing on the Origins of the Lubicon Lake Dispute*. *Alberta*, Vol. 2, No. 2.
- Fort Assiniboine Friendship Club. Book Committee. 1982. *Echoes of Fort Assiniboine and Districts*. Fort Assiniboine, Alberta: Fort Assiniboine Friendship Club Book Committee.
- Francis, R Douglas. 1989a. *Images of the West: Responses to the Canadian Prairies*. Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Books.
- . 1989b. "In Search of the Prairie Myth: A Survey of the Intellectual and Cultural Historiography of Prairie Canada," *Journal of Canadian Studies*, 24: 44-69.
- Francis, R. D. and Howard Palmer. 1992. *The Prairie West: Historical Readings*. 2nd ed., Revised and Expanded. Edmonton: Pica Pica Press.
- Fred Wild interviewed by Peter J. Murphy at Sturgeon County, Alberta, 5 February 1991. P. Murphy Files.
- Friesen, Gerald. 1984. *The Canadian Prairies, A History*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Fryer, Harold. 1977. *Alberta: The Pioneer Years*. Langley, BC: Stagecoach.
- . (n.d.) *The Frog Lake massacre*. Frontier Book #32 [F.W. Anderson]
- Gilpin, John F. 1984. *Edmonton, Gateway to the North*. Woodland Hills, Calif.: Windsor

Publications.

- . 1996. "Economic History of Northern Alberta," *Alberta History*. Vol 44, No. 2: 24-28.
- . 2005. *Roads to Resources: A History of Transportation in Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Roadbuilders & Heavy Construction Association.
- . *Alberta at 100: Celebrating the Legacy*. Encino, Calif.: Cherbo Pub. Group.
- Grace, Sherrill E. 2002. *Canada and the Idea of the North*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Grassland History Book Committee. 1990. *Dreams and Determination: A History of Grassland and Districts in Alberta*. Grassland, Alta.: History Book Committee.
- Gray, James. 1971. *Red Lights on the Prairies*. Toronto: Macmillan.
- Grow, Stewart. "The Blacks of Amber Valley: Negro Pioneering in Northern Alberta," *Canadian Ethnic Studies* 6, No. 1-2 (1974): 17-38.
- Guest, Robert. 1995. *Trail North: A Journey in Words and Pictures*. Lone Pine Publications, Edmonton.
- Haestie, Elizabeth. 1986. *Ferries and Ferrymen in Alberta*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- Hanson, Eric. 1956. *Local Government in Alberta*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Hedley, Ralph. 1955? *East of the Beaver Hills. A History of Lamont, it's [sic] People and their Achievements, 1892-1955*. Edmonton, Alta. ? : R. Hedley.
- Helgason, Gail. 1987. *The First Albertans*. Edmonton: Lone Pine Publishing.
- Hendriks, Robert W. 2008. *William Bleasdel Cameron: A Life of Writing and Adventure*. Athabasca, AB: Athabasca University.
- Higinbotham, John D. 1978. *When the West Was Young: Historical Reminiscences of the Early Canadian West*. Lethbridge, Alta.: Herald Printers.
- Hill, Douglas. 1967. *The Opening of the Canadian West*. London: Heinemann.
- Hiller, Harry H. 2009. *Second Promised Land: Migration to Alberta and the Transformation of Canadian Society*. Montreal, Ithaca : McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Historical Society of Alberta. 1969-1975. *The Pioneer West: Reprinted from Early Issues*

- of Alberta Historical Review*. Calgary: Historical Society of Alberta
- . 1975. *Alberta History*. Calgary, Historical Society of Alberta.
- . 1994? *Who's Who in Alberta, 1994-1998: A Biographical Record of the Men and Women of our Time*. Vancouver, BC: B & C List.
- Hoare, Catherine. 1920. "Edmonton to Aklavik, 1920," *The Beaver*. Vol. 18, No. 2: 40-42.
- Hobbs, Margaret. 1987. *Nastawgan: The Canadian North by Canoe & Snowshoe: A Collection of Historical Essays*. Foreword by Eric W. Morse. Toronto: Dundurn.
- Holmgren, E.J. 1975. *Alberta at the Turn of the Century*. Edmonton: Provincial Archives of Alberta
- Holtslander, Dale. 1978 (Winter). "Railway to Athabasca." *Alberta History*.
- Hooks, Gwen. 1997. *The Keystone Legacy: Reflections of a Black Pioneer*. Edmonton: Brightest Pebble Pub. Co.
- Horan, J.W. 1945. "West, Nor'west" *A History of Alberta*. Edmonton: Northgate Books.
- Huberman, Irwin. 2004 [2001]. *The Place We Call Home: A History of Fort McMurray, As Its People Remember, 1778-1980*. Fort McMurray, AB: Fort McMurray Historical Society.
- Hudson's Bay Company. 19--. *Hudson's Bay Company: Edmonton*. Manitoba: Hudson's Bay Company Archives, Provincial Archives of Manitoba.
- Hughes, Katherine. 2006. *In the Promised Land of Alberta's North: The Northern Journal of Katherine Hughes, Summer 1909*. Calgary: Alberta Records Publication Board: Historical Society of Alberta.
- Hurt, L.J. 1979. "The Victoria Settlement 1862-1922." *Historic Sites Service of Alberta Occasional Paper*, no. 7.
- Huth, Robin. 2002. *Guardians of the Forests: History of the Alberta Forest Service: The First Hundred Years*. Silvertown, BC: Wombat Press.
- Hylo-Venice History Book Committee. 2000. *Hylo-Venice: Harvest of Memories*. ??
- Island Lake Historical Society. 2005. *Island Lake: Ripples and Reflections*. Island Lake, AB: Island Lake Historical Society.

- Jackson, Mary Percy. 1995. *Suitable for the Wilds: Letters from Northern Alberta, 1929-1931*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Jamieson, F.C. 1931. The Alberta Field Force of '85. Canadian North-West Historical Society Publications. Vol. 1, no. 7.
- Jamieson, Frederick. 1969. "The Edmonton Hunt," *The Pioneer West*, No. 1: 10-18.
- Johnson, Gregory A. 1999. "Lac La Biche Chronicles: The Early Years." Portage College and Town of Lac la Biche.
- Johnson, R. Byron. 1872. *Very Far West Indeed*. London: Low, Marston, Low & Searle.
- Jones, David C and Ian MacPherson. 1985. *Building Beyond the Homestead: Rural History on the Prairies*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Judge, J.W. 1958. "Early Railroading in Northern Alberta," *Alberta Historical Review*: 12-19.
- Kennedy, H.A. 1925. *Book of the West: Story of Western Canada*. Toronto: Ryerson.
- Kroetsch, Robert. 1993. *Alberta*. Edmonton: NeWest Press.
- Krause, Eric. 1976. "The Fisheries of the Hudson's Bay Company at Fort Chipewyan, 1791-1871," No. 208.
- Kupsch W.D. 1977. "A Valley View in Verdant Prose: the Clearwater Valley from Portage La Loche," *Musk-Ox*. No. 20.
- Lac La Biche Heritage Society. 1975. *Lac La Biche. Yesterday and Today*. Calgary: D.W. Friesen & Sons.
- Lake Saskatoon History Book Committee. 1980. *Lake Saskatoon Reflections: A Local History of the Lake Saskatoon District*. Sexsmith, Alta.: Lake Saskatoon History Book Committee.
- Lanteigne, Raymond. 1983. *Voix Albertaines: supplément français à Voices of Alberta: a survey of oral history completed in Alberta up to 1980*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources Division.
- Larmour, Judy. 2005. *Laying Down the Lines: A History of Land Surveying in Alberta*. Calgary: Brindle & Glass Pub.
- Lena Ouellet interviewed by Peter J. Murphy at Edmonton, 2 August 2005. P. Murphy Files.

- Letter from Dorris Gosney (daughter of forest ranger A. Crawford) to Peter J. Murphy dated 26 October 2000. P. Murphy files.
- Lewis, Margaret. 1979. *To Conserve a Heritage*. [s.l.]: Alberta Fish & Game Association.
- Liddell, Ken. 1960. *Alberta Revisited*. Toronto: Ryerson.
- Litalien, Raymonde, Jean-Franc, Ois Palomino, and Denis Vaugeois. 2007. *Mapping a Continent: Historical Atlas of North America 1492–1814*. Montreal and Kingston: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- MacDonald, Graham A. 2009. *The Beaver Hills Country: A History of Land and Life*. Edmonton: AU Press.
- MacEwan, John Walter Grant. 1995 [1975]. *Mighty Women: Stories of Western Canadian Pioneers*. 1st Greystone ed. Vancouver: Greystone Books.
- MacGregor, J.G. 1972. *A History of Alberta*. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- . 1962. *Pack Saddles to Tête Jaune Cache*. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- MacKinnon, C.S. 1980. "Some Logistics of Portage La Loche (Methy)," *Prairie Forum*.
- Mackintosh, William A. 1974. *Canadian Frontiers of Settlement*. Millwood, NY: Kraus Reprint.
- MacInnes, C. M. 1930. *In the Shadow of the Rockies*. London: Rivingtons.
- MacRae, A.O. 1912. *History of the Province of Alberta*. The Western Canada History Co.
- Marchildon, Gregory P. 2008. *The Early Northwest*. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Marchildon, Gregory P. ed. 2009. *Immigration and Settlement, 1870-1939*. Regina: University of Regina: CPRC Press.
- Marshall, Ernest A. 2003. *Justice on the Peace: The Law and Lawyers in Alberta's Northwest*. Edmonton: Juriliber.
- McCullough, E.J. 1882. "Prehistoric Cultural Dynamics of the Lac La Biche Region." *Archeological Survey of Alberta Occasional Paper*, No. 18.
- McCullough, E.J. and M. Maccagno. 1985. "The Fur Reports of Lac La Biche." Unpublished Report, on file, Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Edmonton.
- . 1990a. "Life at Lac La Biche: Letters of W.E. Traill, 1874-1881: Part 1." *Alberta*

- History*. Vol. 38, No. 2: 15-23.
- . 1990b. "Life at Lac La Biche: Letters of W.E. Traill, Part 2." *Alberta History*. Vol. 38, No. 3: 23-30.
- . 1990c. "Life at Lac La Biche: Letters of W.E. Traill, 1874-1881: Part 3." *Alberta History*. Vol. 38, No. 4: 20-28.
- . 1991. *Lac La Biche and the Early Fur Traders*. Edmonton: Canadian Circumpolar Institute.
- McKenzie, Clyde. 1983. *A History of Recreation in Westlock*. Town of Westlock.
- McLachlan, Elizabeth. 1999. *With Unshakeable Persistence: Rural Teachers of the Depression Era*. Edmonton: NeWest Press.
- McQuarrie, A.H. 1966 (Autumn). "Building the Edson Trail." *Alberta Historical Review*
- Mitchell, Elaine Allan. 1944. *The Canadian North: a Guide to Reading*. Ottawa: Canadian Legion Educational Services.
- Mitchell, Patricia and Ellie Prepas. eds. 1990. *Atlas of Alberta Lakes*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Mohsen, A. S. A. and W. C. MacKay. 1986. *Proceedings of the 1st Northern Workshop, Boreal Institute for Northern Studies University of Alberta, November 22-24, 1984*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- Morgenstern, D. C. 1976. *Fort Assiniboine Area*. Edmonton: Alberta Energy and Natural Resources.
- Morton, Arthur Silver. 1937. *Under Western Skies*. Toronto: Thomas Nelson & Sons.
- . 1944. *Sir George Simpson: A Pen Picture of A Man of Action*. Toronto: J. M. Dent.
- . 1973. *A History of the Canadian West to 1870-71*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1974. *History of Prairie Settlement*. Toronto: Macmillan 1938 ; Millwood, N.Y.: Kraus Reprint Co.
- Murphy, P.J. 1985. *History of Forest and Prairie Fire Control Policy in Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Energy and Natural Resources.

- . 2001. "Wildfire in Alberta," Edmonton: Natural Disturbance and Forest Management Symposium, 5 March 2001.
- . 2007. *A Hard Road to Travel: Land, Forests and People in the Upper Athabasca Region*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Bruce Peel Special Collections.
- Nestow, Tawatinaw, Rochester, Perryvale History Book Committee. 1986. *Rolling Hills and Whispering Pines: A History of the Nestow, Tawatinaw, Rochester and Perryvale districts as Remembered and Recorded by their People*. [S.l.]: Nestow, Tawatinaw, Rochester Perryvale History Book Committee.
- Niddrie, John G. 1965. "The Edmonton Boom of 1911-1912," *Alberta Historical Review*: 1-6.
- Opryshko, George S. 1967. *A History of the Schools of the County of Athabasca*. Athabasca, AB: Athabasca Local, Alberta Teachers' Association.
- Owram, Doug. 1980. *Promise of Eden: The Canadian Expansionist Movement and the Idea of the West, 1856-1900*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Palmer, Howard. 1982. *Patterns of Prejudice: A History of Nativism in Alberta*. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart.
- . 1990. *Alberta: A New History*. Edmonton: Hurtig.
- Palmer, Howard and Donald Smith. 1980. *The New Provinces: Alberta and Saskatchewan, 1905-1980: 12th Western Canada Studies Conference*. Vancouver: Tantalus Research.
- Palmer, Howard and Tamara Palmer. 1985. *Peoples of Alberta: Portraits of Cultural Diversity*. Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Books.
- . 1985. "The Black Experience in Alberta," In: *Peoples of Alberta: Portraits of Cultural Diversity*. Edited by Howard and Tamara Palmer, 365-93. Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Books, 1985.
- Pike, Warburton. 1894. *The Barren Ground of Northern Canada*. London: MacMillan.
- Pioneer Society of Hythe and District, 1972. *Pioneer Roundup: A History of Albright and Demmitt*. Hythe, Alberta.
- Pitt, George H. 2001. "Pycrete: Ice Ships in the Rockies!" Wetaskiwin, Alberta.
<http://www.combinedrops.com/Pycrete.htm>.
- Pollock, John. 1978. *Early Cultures of the Clearwater River Area, Northeastern Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources Division.

- Priestley, Norman F. 1967. *Furrows, Faith and Fellowship*. Edmonton, Alberta Agricultural Centennial Committee.
- Provincial Archives of Alberta. 1999. *Alberta, Formerly a part of the North-West Territories: An Index to Birth, Marriage and Death Registrations Prior to 1900*. Edmonton: Documentary Heritage Society of Alberta.
- Rasky, Frank. 1967. *The Taming of the Canadian West*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart Ltd.
- Raup, Hugh Miller and George W. Argus. 1982. *The Lake Athabasca sand dunes of Northern Saskatchewan and Alberta, Canada*. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- Raymont, Peter. 2001. *J.D. Edwards [enregistrement vidéo]: Un Fermier de Amber Valley*. Montréal ; Ciné-Fête.
- Rick, Anne Meachem. 1975. "Analysis of Animal Remains from the Old Fort Point Site," *Northern Alberta*. No. 26.
- Robinson, Mike. 1982. *The Monkman Pass and Trail: A Brief History*. Calgary: Petro-Canada Coal Division.
- Rosenzweig, Uriel. 2000. *The First Century of Jewish life in Edmonton and Northern Alberta, 1893-1993: The First and Second Generations*. Edmonton: Jewish Archives and Historical Society of Edmonton and Northern Alberta.
- Rowand, E. 1973. "The Rebellion at Lac La Biche." *Alberta Historical Review*, Vol. 21, No. 3: 1-9.
- . (n.d.) "Entrepot of the North." Unpublished Manuscript, Lac La Biche Archives, Lac La Biche, Alberta.
- Sanders, Harry Max. 2003. *The Story Behind Alberta Names: How Cities, Towns, Villages, and Hamlets Got Their Names*. Calgary: Red Deer Press.
- Sawchuck, Joe, et al. 1981. *Métis Land Rights in Alberta: A Political History*. Edmonton: Métis Association of Alberta.
- Schneider, Ena. 1989. *Ribbons of Steel: The Story of the Northern Alberta Railways*. Calgary: Detselig.
- Secord, Richard Y., et al. 1981. *A Builder of the North: The Life and Times of Richard Secord*. Edmonton: Secord.

- Seton, Ernest Thompson. 1911. *The Arctic Prairies*. New York: Charles Schribner's Sons.
- Smith, P.J. 1985. "Edmonton." In: *The Canadian Encyclopedia*. Edited by James H. Marsh. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- Smythe, David. 1978. "Provisioning of a Fur Trade Post: The Case of Rocky Mountain House," No. 99.
- . 1984 (Winter). "Tête Jaune." *Alberta History*.
- Somerset, H. Somers. 1895. *The Land of the Muskeg*. London: Heineman.
- Stanley, George Douglass. 1951. *A Round-Up of Fun in the Foothills*. s.l.: Stanley.
- Stanley, G.F.G. 1936. *The Birth of Western Canada*. Toronto: Longmans, Green and Co.
- . 1976. "Indian Raid at Lac La Biche." *Alberta History*, Vol. 24, No. 3: 25-27.
- Strange, H. G. L. 1954. *A Short History of Prairie Agriculture*. Winnipeg, MB: Searle Grain Co.
- Strasbourg, Alvina. (n.d.) *Memories of a Métis Woman: Fort McMurray Yesterday and Today*. Fort McMurray, Alberta: Self-published.
- Switzer, Harvey A. 1960 (Summer). "On the Edson-Grande Prairie Trail." *Alberta Historical Review*.
- Thomson, Arthur H. 1982. *Our Place in the Province: Vols. 1-4*. Athabasca, Alberta: Athabasca County Board of Education.
- Thomson, Colin A. 1979. *Blacks in Deep Snow: Black Pioneers in Canada*. Don Mills, ON: Dent.
- Townshend, Nancy. 2005. *A History of Art in Alberta, 1905-1970*. Calgary: Bayeux Arts Inc.
- Tait, C. M. 1905? *The Making of a Province: Alberta, Together with the Urban Development and Rural Advancement of its Northern Part, in and Near the (at least) Provisional Capital, Edmonton*. Edmonton: s.n.
- Thomas, Richard. 1998. *The Boreal Forest Natural Region of Alberta*. Edmonton: The Dept.
- Thomas, Lewis G. 1975. *The Prairie West to 1905: A Canadian Sourcebook*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.

- Thomas, Lewis H. ed. 1976. *Essays on Western History: In Honour of Lewis Gwynne Thomas*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Thomson, Arthur H. 1982. *Our Place in the Province: Vols. 1-4*. Athabasca, Alberta: Athabasca County Board of Education.
- Thompson, Ruby Trench. 1967. *Pioneers of Athabasca*. Edited by Raymond Thompson. R. Thompson Co.
- Thomson, Colin A. 2004. *The Romance of Alberta Settlements*. Centennial Edition. Calgary: Detselig Enterprises.
- . 1984. *Swift Runner*. Calgary: Detselig Enterprises.
- . 2006. *Sounds like Alberta: (1754-1905)*. Calgary: Detselig Enterprises.
- Traill, W.E. 1874a. Letter to Mary, February 15. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1874b. Letter to Mother, September 1. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1874c. Letter to Kate, October 15. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1874d. Letter to Mother, November 22. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1875. Letter to Annie, January 3. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1877a. Letter to Lawrence Clark, July 10. Hardisty Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1877b. Letter to Richar Hardisty, September 12. Hardisty Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1877c. Letter to Richard Hardisty, September 24. Hardisty Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1877d. Letter to Richard Hardisty, October 16. Hardisty Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1877e. Letter to Lawrence Clark, June 20. Hardisty Papers, Glenbow-Alberta

- Institute, Calgary.
- . 1878a. Lac La Biche Chiefs Answer to Governor's Message, January 3. Hardisty Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1878b. Letter to Richard Hardisty, January 5. Hardisty Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1878c. Letter to Mother, February 15. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1878d. Letter to Annie, October 6. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1878e. Letter to Richard Hardisty, November 26. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1879. Letter to Mother, August 3. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1881a. Letter to Annie, January 5. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . 1881b. Letter to Mother, July 3. Traill Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- . n.d. Reminiscence, "So the Poor Indian." Unpublished Papers, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- Troper, Harold M. 1972. "The Creek Negroes of Oklahoma and Canadian Immigration, 1909-1911," *Canadian Historical Review*. Vol. 53, No. 3.
- Truax, Madelon F. and Beth Sheehan. 1988. *People of the Pass: a Human Interest Story of the Monkman Pass*. Grande Prairie: Beaverlodge and District Historical Association.
- Tyrrell, J.B. 1887. *Report on a Part of Northern Alberta and Portion of Adjacent Districts of Assiniboia and Saskatchewan. Part E. Annual Report, 1886*. Geological and Natural History Survey of Canada. Montreal: Dawson Bros.
- United Church of Canada. Westlock and District Pastoral Charge. 1975. *The First Fifty Years*. s.l.: Westlock and District Pastoral Charge.
- University of Alberta. 2001. "Culture, Ecology and Restoration Project: Exploring the Human History of the Upper Athabasca Valley. Farmsteads in the Upper Athabasca Valley." CD ROM, Edmonton.

- Unknown. 1984. *Athabasca: The Geographic Centre of Alberta*. Athabasca, Ab.: s.n.
- Vanderhill, Burke G. 1982. "The Passing of the Pioneer Fringe in Western Canada," *Geographical Review*, 72: 200–217.
- van Herk, Aritha. 2002. *Mavericks: An Incurable History of Alberta*. Red Deer College Toronto: Penguin Canada.
- Von Hauff, Donna, ed. 1992. *Alberta's Parks: Our Legacy*. Edmonton: Alberta Recreation, Parks and Wildlife Foundation.
- Wade, Mason. ed. 1969. *Regionalism in the Canadian Community, 1867-1967*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Waiser, W. A. 1993. *The New Northwest: The Photographs of the Frank Crean Expeditions, 1908-1909*. Saskatoon: Fifth House.
- Walker, Ella Jacoby. 1947. *Fortress North*. Toronto: Thomas Allen Ltd.
- Wandering River History Book. 1983. *Wandering River History Book*. Wandering River, Alta.: The Institute.
- Wandering River Women's Institute. 1983. *Wandering River History Book*. Wandering River, AB: The Institute.
- Wark, Kenneth. 1983. *A Report on Alberta Elections, 1905-1982*. Edmonton: Office of Chief Electoral Officer.
- Warkentin, John. 1964. *The Western Interior of Canada: A Record of Geographical Discovery, 1612-1917*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Watkins, Ernest. 1980. *The Golden Province: A Political History of Alberta*. Calgary: Sandstone.
- Wetherell, Donald and Irene R.A. Kmet 2000. *Alberta's North: A History, 1890–1950*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Wetton, C. n.d. 1953. *The Promised Land: The Story of the Bar Colonists*. Lloydminster: Lloydminster Times.
- Wiebe, Rudy. 1972. *Stories From Western Canada: A Selection*. Toronto: Macmillan of Canada.
- Wilcox, Walter D. 1897. *Camping in the Canadian Rockies*. G.P. Putnam, New York.

- Wilson, Clifford. *Ed.* 1954. *Northern Treasury: Selections from the Beaver*. Toronto: T. Nelson.
- Wilson, T.E. 1972. "Trail Blazer of the Canadian Rockies: Thomas E. Wilson" as told by W.E. Rowed. H.H. Dempsey (ed.). Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.
- Wonders, William C. ed. 1988. *Knowing the North: Reflections on Tradition, Technology and Science*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- . *ed.* 2003. *Canada's Changing North*. Revised Edition. Montreal : McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Woodford, James. 1972. *The Violated Vision: The Rape of Canada's North*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Woods Gordon. 1982. *Social and Economic Assessment Study: Greater County of Athabasca: Program Report*. [S.l. : s.n.].
- Wuetherick, Robert G. [1972?]. *A History of Fort Chipewyan and the Peace-Athabasca Delta Region*. [s.n.]

Political History

- Alberta. Alberta Association of Municipal Districts and Counties. 1983? *Story of Rural Municipal Government in Alberta: 1909 to 1983*. Edmonton: The Association.
- Alberta. Legislative Assembly. 2009. *Biographies of Members: Legislative Assembly of Alberta, 27th Legislature*. Edmonton: Legislative Assembly of Alberta.
- Barrie, Doreen Patricia. 2006. *The Other Alberta: Decoding a Political Enigma*. Regina: University of Regina, Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Drees, Laura Meijer. 2000. 2002. *The Indian Association of Alberta: A History of Political Action*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- Hathaway-Rae, Suzanne. 1998. *Serving Martha and Henry: Rural Municipal Government in Alberta 1983-1998*. Edmonton, AB: Alberta Association of Municipal Districts and Counties.
- Hunt, John D. 1983. *A Report on Alberta Elections, 1905-1982*. Edmonton, Alberta: Office of the Chief Electoral Officer.
- Mardon, Austin A. *Alberta Catholic Politicians*. 2001. [Edmonton?] : Golden Meteorite Press.

- Mardon, Ernest G. 2007. *French Canadians in the Political Life of the Province of Alberta, (1891-2005)*. Edmonton, AB: Institut pour le patrimoine de la francophonie de l'Ouest canadien.
- Perry, Sandra E. 2006. *The Mantle of Leadership: Premiers of the Northwest Territories and Alberta, 1897-2005*. Edmonton: Legislative Assembly of Alberta.
- . 2006a. *Centennial Series (Legislative Assembly of Alberta), 1869-2005*. Edmonton: Legislative Assembly of Alberta.
- . 2006b. *A Higher Duty: Speakers of the Legislative Assemblies of the North-West Territories and Alberta, 1888-2005*. Edmonton: Legislative Assembly.
- . 2006. *On behalf of the Crown: Lieutenant Governors of the North-West Territories and Alberta, 1869-2005*. Edmonton: Legislative Assembly.
- Pocklington, T. C. 1991. *The Government and Politics of the Alberta Metis Settlements*. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Pratt, Larry. 1976. *The Tar Sands: Syncrude and the Politics of Oil*. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- Richards, John. 1979. *Prairie Capitalism: Power and Influence in the New West*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Sawchuck, Joe, *et al.* 1981. *Métis Land Rights in Alberta: A Political History*. Edmonton: Metis Association of Alberta.
- Sawchuck, Joe, *ed.* 1998. *The Dynamics of Native Politics: The Alberta Metis Experience*. Saskatoon: Purich Publishing.
- Wark, Kenneth. 1983. *A Report on Alberta Elections, 1905-1982*. Edmonton: Office of Chief Electoral Officer.
- Watkins, Ernest. 1980. *The Golden Province: A Political History of Alberta*. Calgary: Sandstone.
- Wood, Louis Aubrey. 1975. *A History of the Farmer's Movements in Canada*. Toronto and Buffalo: University of Toronto Press.

Legal History and Current Developments

- Alberta. Water Resources Branch. 1948. *Report on Surface Water Supplies and Water Power of Alberta: Their Present and Ultimate Uses*. Edmonton, Alta.: Alberta, Water Resources Branch.
- Ciaccia, John. ?? *The Settlement of Native Claims*. Edmonton: *The Alberta Law Review*. Vol. XV.
- Goodman, Tristan M. 2005. "The Development of Prairie Canada's Water Law, 1870-1940," In: *Laws and Societies in the Canadian Prairie West, 1670-1940*. Edited by Lou Knafla and Jonathan Swainger. Vancouver: UBC Press.
- Kennett, Steven Alexander. 2009. *The Law of the Land: A Legal Foundation for Alberta's Land-Use Framework*. Drayton Valley, Alta.: Pembina Institute.
- Kwasniak, Arlene J. 2007a. *Wildlife Management Beyond Wildlife Laws*. Calgary, Alta.: Canadian Institute of Resources Law, University of Calgary.
- . 2007b. "The Supreme Court of Alberta and Water Law," In: *The Alberta Supreme Court at 100: History & Authority*. 1st ed. Edited by Jonathan Swainger. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- . 2002. *Alberta's Wetlands: A Law and Policy Guide*. Corrected ed. Edmonton: Environmental Law Centre.
- Marshall, Ernest A. 2003. *Justice on the Peace: The Law and Lawyers in Alberta's Northwest*. Edmonton: Juriliber.
- McClung, J. W. (John W.) 1997. *Law West of the Bay*. Edmonton?: s.n.
- Morse, B.W., ed. 1985. *Aboriginal Peoples and the Law: Indian, Metis and Inuit Rights in Canada*. Ottawa: Carleton University Press.

First Nations

- Abel, Kerry. 1993. *Drum Songs: Glimpses of Dene History*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Ahenakew, Edward. 1973. *Voices of the Plains Cree*, Edited by Ruth Buck. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Alberta. Alberta Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development. 2001. *Profiles Metis Settlements and First Nations*. Edmonton: Alberta Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development.

- Allen, Robert and Mary Tobin. 1989. *Native Studies in Canada: A Research Guide*. 3rd Edition. Indian and Northern Affairs. Ottawa: Queen's Printer.
- Anderson, Anne. 1973. *Legends of Wesakecha*. Edmonton: Cree Productions?
- Anderson, R.R. 1970. "Alberta Stoney (Assiniboin) Origins and Adaptations: A Case for Reappraisal," *Ethnohistory*, Vol. 17, No. 1-2.
- Asch, Michael. 1975. "Social Context and the Musical Analysis of Slavey Drum Dances," *Ethnomusicology*, 19: 245-257.
- . 1976. *The Impact of Changing Fur Trade Practices on the Economy of the Slavey Indians: Some Preliminary Conclusions Regarding the Period: 1870-1900*. [s.l. : s.n.]
- . 1977. "The Dene Economy," In: *Dene Nation—The Colony Within*, Edited by Mel Watkins. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 245-257.
- . 1980. "Steps Towards the Analysis of Aboriginal Athapascan Social Organization." *Arctic Anthropology*, Vol. 17, No. 2: 46-51.
- . 1981. "Slavey," In: *Handbook of North American Indians, Vol. 6, Subarctic*. Edited by June Helm. Washington, D.C. Smithsonian Institution.
- . 1984. *Home and Native Land*. Toronto: Methune.
- . 1988. *Kinship and the Drum Dance in a Northern Dene Community*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- . 1989. "Wildlife: Defining the Animals the Dene Hunt and the Settlement of Aboriginal Rights Claims," *Canadian Public Policy/Analyses de politiques*. Vol. 15, No. 2: 205-19.
- Ashwell, Reg. 1977. *Indian Tribes of the Northwest*. Saanichton, BC: Hancock House.
- Athabasca Chipewyan First Nation. 2003. *Footprints on the Land: Tracing the Path of the Athabasca Chipewyan First Nation*. Fort Chipewyan, AB: Athabasca Chipewyan First Nation.
- Balikci, Asen. 1963. *Vunta Kutchin Social Change*. Northern Coordination and Research Centre Publication 62(3). Ottawa: Department of Northern Affairs and National Resources, Canada.
- Basso, Ellen B. 1978. "The Enemy of Every Tribe: "Bushman" Images in Northern Athapaskan Narratives," *American Ethnologist*. 5: 690-709.

- Basso, Keith. 1972. "Ice and Travel Among the Fort Norman Slave: Folk Taxonomies and Cultural Rules," *Language in Society*. Vol. 1, No. 1: 31-49.
- Bataille, Gretchen M., ed., 1993. *Native American Women: A Biographical Dictionary*. New York: Garland Publishing.
- Barbeau, Charles Marius. 1923. *Indian days in the Canadian Rockies*. Toronto: Macmillan.
- . 1960. *Indian days on the Western Prairies*. Bulletin #163, Anthropology Series 46] Ottawa: Dept. of Northern Affairs and Natural Resources.
- Barron, F.L. and J.B. Waldrum. 1986. *1885 and After: Native Society in Transition*. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Centre.
- Berry, Susan, and Jack Brink. 2004. *Aboriginal Cultures in Alberta: Five Hundred Generations*. Edmonton: Royal Alberta Museum and Syncrude.
- Bishop, Charles A. 1980. "Kwah: Carrier Chief," In: *Old Trails and New Directions*. Edited by C.M. Judd and A.J. Ray. Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 191-206.
- Blondin, George. 1990. *When the World Was New: Stories of the Sahtu Dene*. Yellowknife: Outcrop.
- . 1997. *Yamoria the Lawmaker: Stories of the Dene*. Edmonton: NeWest Press.
- Bonnichsen, Robson, and Karen L. Tunrmire. 1999. *Ice Age People of North America*. Corvallis: Oregon State University Press for the Center for the Study of the First Americans.
- Bopp, Judie. 1987. *The Beaver People: A Case Study in Traditional Northern Native Teaching and Learning Practices*. Lethbridge, AB: Four Worlds International Institute for Human and Community Development.
- Brass, Eleanor Dieter. 1979. *Medicine Boy and other Cree Tales*. Calgary: Glenbow Institute.
- British & Foreign Bible Society. 1904. *Cree Bible*. London.
- British & Foreign Bible Society. 1946. Bible. *Old Testament: the Old Testament in the Cree language*. London.
- Brock, Harald Beyer. 1983. "The Bluefish River Incident," In: *The Politics of Indianness: Case Studies of Ethno-politics in Canada*. Edited by Adrian Tanner. St. Johns: Institute of Social and Economic Research, Memorial University.

- . 1986. *Woodland Trappers: Hare Indians of the North-west Canada*. Bergen Studies in Social Anthropology, No. 35. Bergen, Norway: Department of Anthropology, University of Bergen.
- Brumbach, Hetty Jo and Robert Jarvenpa. 1989. *Ethnoarchaeological and Cultural Frontiers: Athapaskan, Algonquian, and European Adaptations in the Central Subarctic*. New York: P. Lang.
- Brumbach, Hetty Jo, Robert Jarvenpa, and Clifford Buell. 1982. "An Ethno - archaeological Approach to Chipewyan Adaptations in the Late Fur Trade Period," *Arctic Anthropology* Vol. 19, No.1:1-49.
- Bryan, A.L. 1969. "Late Prehistoric Cree Expansion into North Central Alberta." *The Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology*. Vol. 1.
- Burch, E.S., Jr. 1979. "Ethnography of Northern North America: A Guide to Recent Research." *Arctic Anthropology*, Vol. 16, No. 1.
- Canada. 1971. *Handbook of Indians of Canada*. Ottawa: Geographic Board of Canada, 1912.
- Canada. [Facsimile reprint, 1971] *Handbook of Indians of Canada*. Ottawa: Geographic Board of Canada, 1912.
- Canada. Indian Affairs Branch. 1967. *Indians of the Prairie Provinces: An Historical Review*. Ottawa, Dept. of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Indian Affairs Branch.
- Canada. National Museum of Man. 1974. *The Athapaskans: Strangers of the North*. Ottawa.
- Canada. Ministry of Indian and Northern Affairs. 1977. *About Indians: A Listing of Books*. 4th Ed. Ottawa.
- Canada. National Library of Canada. 1985. *Books in Native Languages in the Rare Book Collection*. Ottawa.
- Carlson, Nathan D. 2009. "Reviving Witiko (Windigo): An Ethnohistory of "Cannibal Monsters" in the Athabasca District of Northern Alberta, 1878-1910," *Ethnohistory*, Vol. 56 Issue 3: 355-394.
- Carter, Sarah. 1999. *Aboriginal People and Colonizers of Western Canada to 1900*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Christian, Jane and Peter M. Gardiner. 1977. *The Individual in Northern Dene Thought*

- and Communication: A Study in Sharing and Diversity*. Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 35. Ottawa: National Museum of Man.
- Chumak, Sebastian. 1983. *The Stonies of Alberta: An Illustrated Heritage of Genesis, Myths, Legends, Folklore and Wisdom of Yahey Wichastabi, The People Who-Cook-With-Hot-Stones*. Calgary: The Alberta [Heritage] Foundation.
- Clark, Annette McFadyen. ed. *Proceedings: Northern Athapaskan Conference, 1971*. 2 Vols. Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 27. Ottawa: National Museum of Man.
- Cottam, S. Barry. 1997. *Aboriginal Peoples and Archives: A Brief History of Aboriginal and European Relations in Canada*. Ottawa: National Archives of Canada.
- Coutu, Phillip R. and Lorraine D. Hoffman-Mercredi. 1999. *Inkonze: The Stones of Traditional Knowledge: A History of Northeastern Alberta*. 1st Edition. Edmonton: Thunderwoman Ethnographics.
- . 2002. *Inkonze: The Stones of Traditional Knowledge: A Story of the Athabasca Tar Sands*. 2nd Edition. Edmonton: Thunderwoman Ethnographics.
- Crowe, Kieth J. 1991. *A History of the Original Peoples of Northern Canada*. Revised Edition. Montreal: Mc-Gill-Queens Press.
- Cruikshank, Julie. 1988a. "Myth and Tradition as Narrative Framework: Oral Histories From Northern Canada," *International Journal of Oral History*, 9: 198-214.
- . 1988b. "Telling about Culture: Changing Traditions in Subarctic Anthropology," *Northern Review*, 1: 27-40.
- . 1990. "Getting the Words Right: Perspectives on Naming and Places in Athapaskan Oral History," *Arctic Anthropology*, Vol. 27, No. 1: 52-65.
- . 2001. "Glaciers and Climate Change: Perspectives from Oral Tradition," *Arctic* 54, No. 4: 377-393.
- Curtis, Natalie. ed. 1950. *The Indians' Book*. New York: Dover.
- Dacks, Gurston and Ken Coates. eds. 1988. *Northern Communities: The Prospects for Empowerment*. Edmonton, Alta.: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- Decker, Jody. 1988. "Tracing Historical Diffusion Patterns: The Case of the 1780–82 Smallpox Epidemic Among the Indians of Western Canada," *Native Studies Review* 4: 1–24.
- . 1991. "Depopulation of the Northern Plains Natives," *Social Science and*

- Medicine*, 33, No. 4: 381-393.
- Dempsey, Hugh A. 1997. *Indian Tribes of Alberta*. 3rd Revised, Expanded, and Updated Edition. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- Derry, David E., and Douglas R. Hudson. eds. 1975. "Special Issue: Athapaskan Archeology," *Western Canadian Journal of Archeology*, 5: 3-4.
- Devine, Heather. 2004. *People Who Own Themselves: Aboriginal Ethnogenesis in a Canadian Family, 1660-1900*. University of Calgary Press.
- Dickason, Olive Patricia. [1996] 1992. *Canada's First Nations: A History of Founding Peoples from Earliest Times*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.
- Dickason, Olive Patricia. ed., 1995. *The Native Imprint: The Contribution of First Peoples to Canada's Character*. Athabasca: Athabasca University.
- Dion, Joseph F. 1979. *My Tribe, The Crees*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- Donahue, Paul F. 1975. "Concerning Athapaskan Prehistory in British Columbia," *The Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology*, V (3-4): 21-63.
- Drees, Laura Meijer. 2000. 2002. *The Indian Association of Alberta: A History of Political Action*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- Dumond, D. E. 1979. "Eskimo-Indian Relationships: A View from Prehistory," *Arctic Anthropology*, Vol. 16, No. 2: 3-22.
- Dusenberry, V. 1960. "Notes on the Material Culture of the Assiniboine Indians," *Ethnos*, Vol. 2.
- Fort McKay First Nations. 1994. *There is Still Survival Out There: A Traditional Land Use and Occupancy Study of the Fort McKay First Nations*. Fort McKay First Nations, Alberta.
- Fraser, W. 1966. "Big Bear: Indian Patriot." *Alberta Historical Review*, Vol. 14, no 2: 1-13.
- Frideres, J.S. 1983. *Native People in Canada: Contemporary Conflicts (2nd Edition)*. Scarborough: Prentice-Hall.
- Gillespie, Beryl C. 1975. "Territorial Expansion of the Chipewyan in the 18th Century," In: *Proceedings: Northern Athapaskan Conference, 1971*. Edited by Annette McFayden Clark, 2: 350-388. Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 27. Ottawa: National Museum of Man.

- . 1976. "Changes in Territory and Technology of the Chipewyan," *Arctic Anthropology*, Vol. 13, No. 1: 6-11.
- . 1978. "Territorial Groups Before 1821. Athapaskans of the Shield and the Mackenzie Drainage," In: *Handbook of North American Indians*, Vol 6. *Subarctic*, Edited by June Helm, 285-90. Washington: Smithsonian Institution Press.
- Goddard, Pliny Earle. 1916. "The Beaver Indians," *Anthropological Papers of the American Museum of Natural History*, 10: 201-293.
- . 1917. *Beaver texts, Beaver Dialect*. New York: Published by Order of the Trustees.
- . 1919. "Notes on the Sun Dance of the Cree in Alberta," *Anthropological Papers of the American Museum of Natural History* 16: 295-310.
- Godsell, Philip H. 1938. *Red Hunters of the Snows: An Account of Thirty Years' Experience with the Primitive Indian and Eskimo tribes of the Canadian Northwest and Arctic coast, with a brief history of the early contact between white fur traders and the aborigines*. Toronto: The Ryerson Press.
- Gooderham, Kent. 1970. *Nestum asa: The Way It Was In The Beginning*. Toronto: Griffin Press.
- Goulet, Jean-Guy. 1998. *Ways of Knowing: Experience, Knowledge, and Power Among the Dene Tha*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.
- Harrison, Julia D. 1987. *The Spirit Sings: Artistic Traditions of Canada's First Peoples*. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart; Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- Helm, June. 1966. *The Dogrib Hand Game*. Ottawa: National Museum [Bulletin 205, Anthropological Series 71].
- . 1976. *The Indians of the Subarctic: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington and London: Indian University Press.
- Helm, June, Edward S. Rogers, and James G.E. Smith. 1981. "Intercultural Relations and Cultural Change in the Shield and Mackenzie Borderlands, 146-157 in *Handbook of North American Indians*, Vol. 6: *Subarctic*. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution.
- Helm, June and Vital Thomas. 1966 (Winter). "Tales from the Dogribs," *The Beaver*: 52-54.
- Hodge, F.W. 1913. "Handbook of Indians in Canada." *10th Report of the Geographic*

- Board of Canada*, Appendix Ottawa: King's Printer.
- Hood, Robert. 1967 (Winter). "Some Account of the Cree and Other Indians, 1819," *Alberta Historical Review*.
- Jenness, Diamond. 1956. "The Chipewyan Indians," *Anthropologica*, Vol. 3, No. 1: 15-34.
- . 1977. *The Indians of Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press [originally published in 1932 by *National Museum of Canada Bulletin*, no. 65.].
- Kidd, Kenneth E. 1956. *Canadians of Long Ago: Story of the Canadian Indians*. Toronto: Longmans.
- Krech III, Shepard. 1979. "The Nakotcho Kutchin: A Tenth Aboriginal Kutchin Band?," *Journal of Anthropological Research* Vol. 35, No. 1: 109-121.
- . 1980. "Northern Athapaskan Ethnology in the 1970s," *Annual Review of Anthropology* 9: 83-100.
- . 1980 Introduction: "Reconsiderations" and Ethnohistorical Research. *Arctic Anthropology* Vo.17, No. 2: 1-11.
- . 1980. "Matriorganization: The Basis of Aboriginal Subarctic Social Organization (with Charles Bishop)," *Arctic Anthropology*, Vo.17, No. 2: 34-45.
- . 1981. "Throwing Bad Medicine": Sorcery, Disease and the Fur Trade Among Kutchin and Other Northern Athapaskans," In: *Indians, Animals and the Fur Trade: A Critique of Keepers of the Game*. Athens: University of Georgia Press, 73-108
- . 1981. *Indians, Animals, and the Fur Trade: A Critique of Keepers of the Game*. Athens: University of Georgia Press.
- . 1983. "The Influence of Disease and the Fur Trade on Arctic Drainage Lowlands Dene, 1800–1850," *Journal of Anthropological Research* 39: 123-146.
- . 1984. The Trade of the Slavey and Dogrib at Fort Simpson in the Early Nineteenth Century. In: *Subarctic Fur Trade: Native Social and Economic Adaptations*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press, 99-146.
- . 2000. *The Ecological Indian: Myth and History*. W. W. Norton & Company.
- Kroeber, A. L. 1937. *Athabascan Kin Term Systems*. New Series, Vol. 39, No. 4, Part 1. 602-608.

- Leacock, Eleanor Burke and Nancy Oestreich Lurie. 1971. *North American Indians in Historical Perspective*. 1st Edition. New York: Random House.
- Li, Fanggui and Ronald Scollon. 1976. *Chipewyan Texts*. Institute of history and philology. Academia Sinica. Special publications. Taipei: Nankang.
- Lillos, Brian Martin. 1977. *Selective Studies in Musical Analysis of Beaver Indian Dreamer Songs: A Structuralistic Approach in Ethnomusicology*. Microfiche. Ottawa. National Library of Canada. Thesis (M.Mus.) Vancouver: University of British Columbia.
- Lowie, Robert Harry. 1963. *Indians of the Plains*. New York: Natural History Press.
- Lysenko, Vera. 1947. *Men in Sheepskin Coats: A Study in Assimilation*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- Magne, Martin. 1987. "Distribution of Native Groups in Western Canada. A.D. 1700 to A.D. 1850," In: *Archaeology in Alberta*. Edited by Martin Magne. Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Occasional Paper, (31): 220-232.
- . 2001. "Plateau and Plains Athapaskan Movements in the Late Prehistoric and Early Historic Times: A View From the Middle," Paper Prepared for the 5 th. Biennial Rocky Mountain Anthropological Conference, Waterton Lakes National Park, Alberta, September 20-23.
- MacNeish, June Helen. 1976. *The Indians of the Subarctic: A Critical Bibliography*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press.
- Marach, Veronica Eileen. 1977. *An Analysis of Beaver Indian and Alaskan Eskimo Myths: A Comparative Approach*. Microfiche. Ottawa. National Library of Canada.
- McCormack, Patricia Alice. 1982. *Fur Trade Society to Class Society: The Development of Ethnic Stratification at Fort Chipewyan, Alberta*. [s.l. : s.n.].
- . 1988. *Northwind Dreaming/Kiwetin Pawatamowin Tthisi Ni*tsi Nats'Ete: Fort Chipewyan, 1788-1988*. Provincial Museum of Alberta Special Publication 6. Edmonton.
- . 1989. *Chipewyans Turn Cree: Governmental and Structural Factors in Ethnic Processes*. North York, Ont.: Captus University Publications.
- McLean, John. 1890. *James Evans: Inventor of the Syllabic System of Cree Language*. Toronto: William Briggs.

- McLuhan, Teri C. ed. 1972. *Touch the Earth: A Self-Portrait of Indian Existence*. New York: Pocket Books.
- Miller, J.R. 1991. *Sweet Promises: A Reader on Indian-White Relations in Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1996. *Shingwauk's Vision: A History of Native Residential Schools*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1996. *Big Bear (Mistahimusqua)*. Toronto: New Haven, Conn.: ECW Press, Distributed to the trade in the U.S. exclusively by InBook.
- . 1997. *Canada and the Aboriginal Peoples, 1867-1927*. Ottawa: Canadian Historical Association.
- . 2004. *Lethal Legacy: Current Native Controversies in Canada*. Toronto: M&S.
- . 2004. *Reflections on Native-Newcomer Relations: Selected Essays*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 2009. *Compact, Contract, Covenant: Aboriginal Treaty-Making in Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Miller, Kahn-Tineta, et al. 1975. *The Historical Development of the Indian Act*. 2nd Edition. Typescript, Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs.
- Mills, Antonia Curtze. 1981. *The Beaver Indian Prophet Dance and Related Movements Among North American Indians*. Microfiche. Ann Arbor, Mich.: University Microfilms International.
- Morice, A.G. 1893. "Notes Archeological, Industrial, and Sociological on the Western Denes," *Transactions of the Canadian Institute*, 4: 1-222.
- . 1906-1910. "The Great Dene Race," *Anthropos*, 1: 229-77, 483-508, 695-730, 2: 1-34, 181-96, 4: 582-606, 5: 113-42, 419-43, 643-53, 969-90.
- Moor, Pat, and Angela Wheelock. 1989. *Wolverine Myths and Visions: Dene Traditions from Northern Alberta*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Morrison, R. Bruce and C. Roderick Wilson. eds. 1986. *Native Peoples: The Canadian Experience*. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart Inc.
- Murphy, P.J. 2007. *A Hard Road to Travel: Land, Forests and People in the Upper Athabasca Region*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Bruce Peel Special Collections.

- National Indian Brotherhood. 1973. *Aboriginal People of Canada and Their Environment*. Rev. ed. Ottawa: The Brotherhood.
- Nelson, Richard K. 1969. *Hunters of the Northern Ice*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Nicholas, George P. and Thomas D. Andrews. Eds. 1997. *At a Crossroads: Archaeology and First Peoples in Canada*. Burnaby, B.C.: Archaeology Press, SFU.
- O-GE-MAS-ES (Little Clerk). 1922. "The Life of Ne-Gua-Nan-I-Sew," *The Beaver*. Vol. 2, No.8: 12-15.
- Osgood, C. 1931. "The Ethnography of the Great Bear Lake Indians." *Bulletin of the Canadian Department of Mines*, No. 70. Ottawa: National Museum of Canada.
- . 1934. "Kutchin Distribution and Synonymy," *American Anthropologist* 36: 168-179.
- Pannekoek, F. *The Fur Trade and Western Canadian Society 1670-1870*. Ottawa: Canadian Historical Association.
- Petitot, Émile. 1970. "Indian Legends of North Western Canada." Translated by T. Habgood. *Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology*, Vol. 2, No. 1: 94-129.
- . 1976. *The Book of Dene: Containing the Traditions and Beliefs of Chipewyan, Dogrib, Slavey, and Loucheux Peoples*. Yellowknife, N.W.T.: Programme Development Division, Department of Education, Government of the Northwest Territories.
- Raoul R. Andersen. 1970. "Alberta Stoney (Assiniboin) Origins and Adaptations: A Case for Reappraisal," *Ethnohistory*, Vol. 17, No. 1/2: 49-61.
- Ray, Arthur J. 1974. *Indians in the Fur Trade: Their Role as Hunters, Trappers and Middlemen in the Lands Southwest of Hudson Bay, 1660-1870*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1996. *I Have Lived Here Since the World Began. An Illustrated History of Canada's Native People*. Toronto: Lester Publishing and Key Porter Books.
- Red Fox, William. 1971. *The Memoirs of Chief Red Fox*. Greenwich, Conn.: Fawcett.
- Reddekopp, Neil. 1996. *The Creation and Surrender of the Beaver and Duncans' Bands' Reserves*. Edmonton: Indian Land Claims, Alberta Aboriginal Affairs, Paper No. 2.
- Reedy-Maschner, Katherine L. and Herbert D. G. Maschner. 1999. "Marauding

- Middlemen: Western Expansion and Violent Conflict in the Subarctic," *Ethnohistory*, Vol. 46, No. 4: 703-743.
- Rice, Keren D. 1978. *Hare Dictionary*. Ottawa: Northern Social Research Division, Dept. of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.
- Ridington, Robin. 1976. "Wechuge and Windigo: A Comparison of Cannibal Belief Among Boreal Forest Athapaskans and Algonkians," *Anthropologica*, Vol.18, No. 2: 107-129.
- . 1978. *People of the Trail: How the Northern Forest Indians Lived*. Vancouver: Douglas and McIntyre.
- . 1988. *Trail to Heaven: Knowledge and Narrative in a Northern Native Community*. Vancouver : Douglas & McIntyre.
- Ridington, Robin and Jillian Ridington. 2006. *When You Sing it Now, Just Like New: First Nations Poetics, Voices, and Representations*. Lincoln : University of Nebraska Press.
- Rochon, Timm. 1993. *Saami and Dene Concepts of Nature*. Umeå: Center for Arctic Research, Umeå University.
- Rogers, E. S. 1969. *Forgotten Peoples*. Toronto: Royal Ontario Museum.
- Russell, Dale R. 1991. *Eighteenth-Century Western Cree and Their Neighbours*. Canadian Museum of Civilization, Mercury Series: Archaeological Survey of Canada Paper No. 143.
- Sanders, Douglas E. 1973. *Native People in Areas of Internal National Expansion: Indians and Inuit in Canada*. Copenhagen: International Work Group for Indigenous Affairs.
- Sanderson, James F. 1965. *Indian Tales of the Canadian Prairies*. Calgary: Historical Society of Alberta.
- Savoie, Donat. 2001. Land Occupancy by the Amerindians of the Canadian Northwest in the 19th century, as reported by Emile Petitot: Toponymic Inventory, Data Analyses, Legal Implications. Ottawa: Indian and Northern Affairs Canada.
- Scarrow, C.A. 1943. *Indians of Canada and Prairie Pioneers*. Regina: School Aids and Text Book Publishers.
- Scollon, Ronald. 1979. *The Context of the Informant Narrative Performance: From Sociolinguistics to Ethnolinguistics at Fort Chipewyan, Alberta*. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.

- Scott, W.H. 1963. "The Beaver River Route," *Alberta Historical Review*, Vol. 11, No. 2: 20-22.
- Sewall, Ian William. 1981. *Kayas: The People*. Little Red River, AB: Little Red River Reading Society; Edmonton: Minister of Alberta Education.
- Simeone, William E. 1995. *Rifles, Blankets, and Beads: Identity, History, and the Northern Athapaskan Potlatch*. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.
- Smith, James G.E. 1981. "Chipewyan, Cree and Inuit Relations West of Hudson Bay, 1714-1955," *Ethnohistory*, Vol. 28, No. 2: 133-156.
- . 1987. "The Western Woods Cree: Anthropological Myth and Historical Reality," *American Ethnologist*, Vol. 14, No. 3: 434-448.
- Smith, J.G.E. and E.S. Burch, Jr. 1979. "Chipewyan and Inuit in the Central Canadian Subarctic, 1613-1977," *Arctic Anthropology*. Vol. 16, No. 2: 76-101.
- Smith, Keith D. 2009. *Liberalism, Surveillance, and Resistance: Indigenous Communities in Western Canada, 1887-1927*. Edmonton: AU Press.
- Sprague, D. N. 1990. *Inventory of Matters Referred to the Department of Justice in the Formation and Administration of Native Policy in Canada, 1867-1934*. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba, Dept. of History.
- . 1991. *Canada's Treaties with Aboriginal People*. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba, Faculty of Law, Canadian Legal History Project.
- Standing Alone, Pete and Chumak, Sebastian. 1994. *The Wisdom of the Cree of Canada: A Book of Healing for the Human Heart*. Calgary, AB: The Alberta Foundation.
- Symington, Fraser. 1969. *The Canadian Indian: The Illustrated History of the Great Tribes of Canada*. Toronto: Maclean-Hunter.
- Tanner, James N., Alice Rigney, Jordan Kuschminder, Charles Cormack Gates, and the Athabasca Chipewyan First Nation. 2003. *Traditional Land Use Study*. Fort Chipewyan, AB: Athabasca Chipewyan First Nation.
- Thornton, Mildred Valley. 1966. *Indian Lives and Legends*. Vancouver: Mitchell Press.
- Ugarenko, Leonard G. 1979. *The Beaver Indians and the Fur Trade on the Peace River, 1700-1850*. M.A., York University.
- Vanstone, James W. 1974. *Athabaskan Adaptations: Hunters and Fishers of the Subarctic Forests*. Chicago: Aldine Publishing Co.

- . 1991. "The Isaac Cowie Collection of Plains Cree Material Culture from Central Alberta," *Fieldiana: Anthropology*, New Series No. 17: 1–56.
- Vizenor, Gerald Robert. 1978. *Wordarrows: Indians and Whites in the New Fur Trade*. Minneapolis : University of Minnesota Press.
- Vyvyan, Clara Coltman Rogers, I. S. MacLaren and Lisa N. LaFramboise. 1998. *The Ladies, the Gwich'in, and the Rat: Travels on the Athabasca, Mackenzie, Rat, Porcupine, and Yukon Rivers in 1926*. (Illustrated edition). Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Wallace, Rod. 2003. "Jasper Raven Totem Pole," Memo from Rod Wallace, Cultural Resources Specialist, Jasper National Park.
- Ward, Donald. 1995. *The People: A Historical Guide to the First Nations of Alberta, Saskatchewan and Manitoba*. Calgary: Fifth House.
- Warman, Cy. 1970. *Weiga of Temagami, and Other Indian Tales*. Freeport, N.Y., Books for Libraries Press.
- Watkins, Mel. ed. 1977. *Dene Nation: The Colony Within*. Toronto: University of Toronto.
- Watt, Frederick B. 1980. *Great Bear: A Journey Remembered*. Yellowknife: Outcrop Ltd.
- Waugh, Earle H. 1996. *Dissonant Worlds: Roger Vandersteene Among the Cree*. Waterloo, ON: Wilfrid Laurier University Press.
- Webber, George. 2003. "Affirming the Traditional: Three Days with the Athabasca Chipewyan Elders," *Legacy*, Vol. 8, No.2: 14-17.
- Wheatley, B. and S. Paradis. 1995. "Exposure of Canadian Aboriginal Peoples to Methylmercury," *Water, Air and Soil Pollution*. 80: 3-11.
- White, Bruce. M. 1999. "The Woman Who Married a Beaver: Trade Patterns and Gender Roles in the Ojibwa Fur Trade," *Ethnohistory* Vol. 46, No. 1: 109-147.
- Whiteside, Don. 1973. *Aboriginal People: A Selected Bibliography Concerning Canada's First People*. Ottawa: National Indian Brotherhood.
- Wuttunee, William I. C. 1962. "Thirst Dance of the Crees," *The Beaver*. Vol. 42, No. 3: 20-23.
- Yerbury, J.C. 1976. "The Post-Contact Chipewyan: Trade Rivalries and Changing

- Territorial Boundaries," *Ethnohistory*, Vol. 23, No. 3: 237-263.
- . 1986. *The Subarctic Indians and the Fur Trade, 1680-1860*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- Zaslow, Morris, Coates Kenneth Coates, and William R. Morrison. 1989. *For Purposes of Dominion: Essays in Honour of Morris Zaslow*. North York, Ont.: Captus Press.
- ## Métis
- Adam, Mercer G. 1885. *The Canadian North West*. Toronto: Rose Publishing.
- Adams, Howard. 1975. *Prison of Grass: Canada From the Native Point of View*. Toronto: New Press.
- Alberta. Alberta Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development. 2001. *Profiles Metis Settlements and First Nations*. Edmonton: Alberta Aboriginal Affairs and Northern Development.
- Alberta Federation of Metis Settlement Associations. 1978. *The Metis People of Canada: A History*.
- Alberta. Provincial Archives. Ann Anderson, "Métis Life in St. Albert in the 1900's".
- Alberta. Provincial Archives. Kristjan Fjeldsted Anderson. "Papers, 1894-1932".
- Andrews, Gerald Smedley. 1985. *Métis Outpost: The History of Kelly Lake*. Victoria: G.S. Andrews.
- Barkwell, Lawrence, Leah Dorion and Darren R. Préfontaine. *Annotated Bibliography and References for Metis Researchers*. Accessed June 25, 2009 from: <http://www.mmf.mb.ca/publications/bibliography.for.metis.researchers.pdf>
- Brasser, T.J., 1975. "Métis Artisans," *The Beaver*, Vol. 55, No. 2: 52-57.
- Burley, David V. 1989. "Function, Meaning and Context: Ambiguities in Ceramic Use by the Hivernant Metis of the Northwestern Plains," *Historical Archaeology* 23(1): 97-106.
- . 1991. *Structural Considerations of Métis Ethnicity: An Archaeological, Architectural, and Historical Study*. Vermillion, S.D. : University of South Dakota Press.
- Callihoo, Victoria. 1970. "Early Life in Lac St. Anne and St. Albert in the 1870's," *The Pioneer West*, No. 2: 7-10.

- Daniels, H. W. 1979. *The Forgotten People: Metis and Non-Status Indian Land Claims*. Ottawa: Native Council of Canada.
- Drouin, E.O. (OMI). 1965. "St Paul des Métis," *Alberta Historical Review*: Vol. 11, No. 4: 12-14.
- . 1973. "Lac Ste-Anne Sakahigan." In: Davidson, ed. 1982. *Spirit and Trails of Lac Ste. Anne*. The Alberta Beach and District Pioneers and Archives Society. Alberta Beach, AB.
- Giraud, M. 1986a. *The Metis in the Canadian West*. Vol. 1. Edmonton: The University of Alberta Press.
- . 1986b. *The Metis in the Canadian West*. Vol. 2. Edmonton: The University of Alberta Press.
- Glenbow Museum. 1985. *Metis: A Glenbow Museum Exhibition: [exhibition catalogue]*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- Hall, D. J. 1977. "Half-Breed Claims Commission," *Alberta History*, Vol. 25, No. 2: 1-8.
- Hatt, Ken. 1985. "Ethnic Discourse in Alberta: Land and the Métis in the Ewing Commission," *Canadian Ethnic Studies*, Vol. 17, No. 2.
- Jackson, John C. 1995. *Children of the Fur Trade: Forgotten Métis of the Pacific Northwest*. Missoula, MT: Mountain Press Pub. Co.
- McNab, David. 2007. *The Long Journey of a Forgotten People: Métis Identities and Family Histories*. Waterloo, Ont. : Wilfrid Laurier University Press.
- "Métis Archive Project," 1979. *Archivia*, No. 8: 154-157.
- Metis Association of Alberta. 1979. *Origins of the Alberta Metis: Land Claims Research Project, 1978-1979*. Edmonton: Metis Association of Alberta
- . 1980. *The Alberta Metis and the Land Claim: Land Claims Research Project, 1979-1980*. Edmonton: Metis Association of Alberta.
- Métis Heritage Association of the Northwest Territories. 1998. *Picking Up the Threads: Métis History in the Mackenzie Basin*. Yellowknife, Northwest Territories: Métis Heritage Association and Parks Canada, Canadian Heritage.
- Morse, B.W., ed. 1985. *Aboriginal Peoples and the Law: Indian, Métis and Inuit Rights in Canada*. Ottawa: Carleton University Press.
- [N.A.] 2008. *Métis roots [sound recording]: Music of the Métis*. Winnipeg: Sunshine.

- Peterson, Jacqueline, and Jennifer S.H. Brown, eds. 1985. *The New Peoples: Being and Becoming Métis in North America*. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba Press.
- Pocklington, T. C. 1991. *The Government and Politics of the Alberta Metis Settlements*. Regina: Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Rowand, E. 1973. "The Rebellion at Lac La Biche." *Alberta Historical Review*, Vol. 21, No. 3: 1-9.
- Sawchuck, Joe, et al. 1981. *Métis Land Rights in Alberta: A Political History*. Edmonton: Metis Association of Alberta.
- Sawchuck, Joe, ed. 1998. *The Dynamics of Native Politics: The Alberta Metis Experience*. Saskatoon: Purich Publishing.
- . 1971. "Métis of the Far North." In Jean Leonard Elliot (Editor): *Native Peoples*. Scarborough, Ontario: Prentice Hall, 1971: 150-169.
- Sprague, D. N. 1983. *The Genealogy of the First Métis Nation: The Development and Dispersal of the Red River Settlement, 1820-1900*. Winnipeg: Pemmican Publications.
- . 1988. *Canada and the Métis, 1869-1885*. Waterloo, ON: Wilfrid Laurier University Press.
- Woodcock, George. 1975. *Gabriel Dumont: The Métis Chief and His Lost World*. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.

Indigenous Knowledge

- Christian, Jane and Peter M. Gardiner. 1977. *The Individual in Northern Dene Thought and Communication: A Study in Sharing and Diversity*. Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 35. Ottawa: National Museum of Man.
- Coutu, Phillip R. 2002. *Inkonze: The Stones of Traditional Knowledge: A Story of the Athabasca Tar Sands*. 2nd Edition. Edmonton: Thunderwoman Ethnographics.
- Flett, L., Bill, L., Crozier, J. and D. Surrendi. 1996. *A Report of Wisdom Synthesized from the Traditional Knowledge Component Studies*. Northern River Basins Study Synthesis Report No. 12.
- Fieber, Frank. 1979 (Spring). "Natural Medicines of the Cree Indians," *The Beaver*. Vol. 58, No. 4: 57-59.
- Freeman, Milton M. R. and Ludwig N. Carbyn. Eds. *Traditional Knowledge and*

- Renewable Resource Management in Northern Regions*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta.
- Goulet, Jean-Guy. 1998. *Ways of Knowing: Experience, Knowledge, and Power Among the Dene Tha*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.
- Johnson, Martha. 1992. *Lore: Capturing Traditional Environmental Knowledge*. [Yellowknife, N.W.T.]: Dene Cultural Institute ; [Ottawa, Ont.] : International Development Research Centre.
- Petitot, Émile. 1976. *The Book of Dene: Containing the Traditions and Beliefs of Chipewyan, Dogrib, Slavey, and Loucheux Peoples*. Yellowknife, N.W.T.: Programme Development Division, Department of Education, Government of the Northwest Territories.
- Ridington, Robin. 1988. *Trail to Heaven: Knowledge and Narrative in a Northern Native Community*. Vancouver : Douglas & McIntyre.
- Schreiber, Dorothy. 1996. *Our knowledge of the mother* [videorecording]. S.l. : Great Plains Production Inc.
- Smith, David M. 1998. "An Athapaskan Way of Knowing: Chipewyan Ontology," *American Ethnologist*, Vol. 25, No. 3: 412-432.
- Standing Alone, Pete and Chumak, Sebastian. 1994. *The Wisdom of the Cree of Canada: A Book of Healing for the Human Heart*. Calgary, AB: The Alberta Foundation.

Treaties

- Asch, Michael. 1993. *Home and Native Land: Aboriginal Rights and the Canadian Constitution*. Vancouver, BC: UBC Press.
- . 1997. *Aboriginal and Treaty Rights in Canada [electronic resource]: Essays on Law, Equity, and Respect for Difference*. Vancouver [B.C.] :UBC Press.
- Belanger, Yale Deron. 2008. *Aboriginal Self-Government in Canada: Current Trends and Issues*. 3rd. Issue. Saskatoon: Purich Pub.
- Cumming, Peter and Neil Mickenberg, eds. 1972. *Native Rights in Canada*, 2nd Edition. Toronto: Indian-Eskimo Association of Canada.
- Daschuk, J.W., et al. 2006. "Treaties and Tuberculosis: First Nations People in Late Nineteenth-Century Western Canada, A Political and Economic Transformation," *Canadian Bulletin of Medical History* Vol. 23 No. 2: 307–30.

- Gooderham, Kent. 1970. *Nestum asa: The Way It Was In The Beginning*. Toronto: Griffin Press.
- . 1972. *The Days of the Treaties*. Toronto: Griffin Press.
- Kelly, Brendan. 2008. "Three Uses of Christian Culture in the Numbered Treaties, 1871-1921," *Prairie Forum*, Vol. 33 Issue 2: 357-384.
- McCullum, Hugh. 1975. *This Land is Not For Sale*. Toronto: Anglican Book Centre.
- . 1976. *The Dene: Land and Unity for the Native People of the Mackenzie Valley, A Statement of Rights*. Yellowknife: Dene of the N.W.T.
- Miller, J.R. 1991. *Sweet Promises: A Reader on Indian-White Relations in Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1997. *Canada and the Aboriginal Peoples, 1867-1927*. Ottawa: Canadian Historical Association.
- . 2000. *Skyscrapers Hide the Heavens: A History of Indian-White Relations in Canada*. 3rd Edition. Toronto; Buffalo: University of Toronto Press.
- . 2004. *Lethal Legacy: Current Native Controversies in Canada*. Toronto: M&S.
- . 2004. *Reflections on Native-Newcomer Relations: Selected Essays*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 2007. *Compact, Contract, Covenant: Canada's Treaty-Making Tradition*. Saskatoon: St. Thomas More College, University of Saskatchewan.
- . 2009. *Compact, Contract, Covenant: Aboriginal Treaty-Making in Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Morse, B.W., ed. 1985. *Aboriginal Peoples and the Law: Indian, Metis and Inuit Rights in Canada*. Ottawa: Carleton University Press.
- Price, Richard T. ed. 1975. *Spirit and Terms of Treaties 6, 7 & 8: Alberta Indian Perspectives*. Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta.
- . ed. 1976. *New Perspectives on the Alberta Indian Treaties*. Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta, 1976.
- . 1999. *The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties*. 3rd Edition. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.

- Ray, Arthur J. and D.B. Freeman. 1978. *'Give Us Good Measure'*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Ray, Arthur J., J.R. Miller, and Frank Tough, eds. 2000. *Bounty and Benevolence: A History of Saskatchewan Treaties*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Sprague, D. N. 1990. *Inventory of Matters Referred to the Department of Justice in the formation and administration of native policy in Canada, 1867-1934*. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba, Dept. of History.
- . 1991. *Canada's Treaties with Aboriginal People*. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba, Faculty of Law, Canadian Legal History Project.
- Tough, Frank. 1992. "Aboriginal Rights Versus the Deed of Surrender: The Legal Rights of Native Peoples and Canada's Acquisition of the Hudson's Bay Company Territory," *Prairie Forum* 17, No. 2: 225-50.
- Wheaton, Cathy. 1999. "The Role of Treaties in the History of Saskatchewan Indian Politics 1910 to 1992," *Journal of Indigenous Thought*, Vol. 2, No. 2.
- Whitehouse, Derek. 1994. "The Numbered Treaties: Similar Means to Dichotomous Ends," *Past Imperfect* 3: 25-45.

Treaty 6

- Alberta. 1977. *As Long As the Sun Shines, the Rivers Flow and the Grass Grows*. Edmonton: Government of Alberta.
- Alberta. 1977. A Report: Treaty Number Six, 1876-1976; Treaty Number Seven, 1877-1977. Edmonton: Indian Treaties Commemoration Program,
- Allen, Robert S. 1972. Big Bear.
- Barkwell, Peter Alan. 1981. "The Medicine Chest Clause in Treaty No. 6." *Canadian Native Law Reporter*, No. 3: 1-23.
- Buckley, Helen. From Wooden Ploughs to Welfare: Why Indian Policy Failed in the Prairie Provinces. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press, 1992.
- Carter, Sarah. 1999. *Aboriginal People and Colonizers of Western Canada to 1900*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Chalmers, John W. "Treaty No. Six." *Alberta History* 25, no. 2 (1977): 23-27.

- Chalmers, John W. Laird of the West. Calgary: Dtselg Enterprises, 1981.
- Chief and Councillors. Treaty Commemoration, 1879-1979: Little Pine Band #116. Pynton, Saskatchewan: Little Pine Band, 1979.
- Christensen, Deanna. Ahtahkakoop: The Epic Account of a Plains Cree Head Chief, His Peoples, and Their Vision for Survival, 1816-1896. Shell Lake, Saskatchewan: Ahtahkakoop Nation, 2000.
- Curriculum Studies and Research Department of the Saskatchewan Indian Cultural College. Treaty Six: Saskatchewan and Alberta, 100 Years, 1876-1976. Edited by Solomon Mosquito et al. Saskatoon: Saskatchewan Indian Cultural College, Curriculum Studies and Research, 1976.
- Dempsey, Hugh A. 1984. *Big Bear: The End of Freedom*. Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre,
- Dempsey, James. 1988. "Persistence of a Warrior Ethic Among the Plains Indians," *Alberta History* 36, No. 1: 1-10.
- DIAND. 1973. *Select Papers: Evolution of Treaty Concepts Generally, Aboriginal Title, Etc.* Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.
- DIAND. 1974. Education - Treaties 1-11 (General Documentation). Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.
- Drees, Laura Meijer. 2000. "Citizenship and Treaty Rights: The Indian Association of Alberta and the Canadian Indian Act, 1946-1948," *Great Plains Quarterly* 20, No. 2: 141-58.
- Dyck, Noel. 1983. "The Negotiation of Indian Treaties and Land Rights in Saskatchewan," In: *Aborigines, Land and Land Rights*, ed. Nicolas Peterson and Marcia Langton, 405-15. Canberra: Australian Institute of Aboriginal Studies.
- Friesen, Jean. 1986. "'Magnificent Gifts': The Treaties of Canada with the Indians of the Northwest, 1869-76," *Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada* 1, No. 5: 41-51.
- Gosse, R., Henderson, J. Y., and R. Carter. 1994. *Continuing Poundmaker and Riel's Quest: A Compilation of the Presentations Made At a Conference on Aboriginal Peoples and Justice*. Saskatoon: Purich Publishing.
- Gulig, Anthony G. 2000. *Shifting Sands: Treaty Rights and Fish and Game Law*

- Enforcement in Northern Saskatchewan, 1920-1945*. Whitewater, Wisconsin: University of Wisconsin Press.
- Indian and Northern Curriculum Resources Center. Treaty #6 Kit. Saskatoon: Indian and Northern Education, University of Saskatchewan, 1970.
- Innes, Rob. "I Do Not Keep the Lands nor Do I Give Them Away:' Did Canada and Plains Cree Come to a Meeting of the Minds in the Negotiations of Treaty Four and Six?" *Journal of Indigenous Thought* 2, no. 2 (1999).
- Irwin, Robert. 2000. "'A Clear Intention to Effect Such a Modification:' The NRTA and Treaty Hunting and Fishing Rights," *Native Studies Review*: 47-89.
- King, Archie. 1979. "After 100 Years Thunderchild Remembers," *Saskatchewan Indian* 9, No. 6: 10-11.
- Kuhlen, Daniel J. 1985. *A Layperson's Guide to Treaty Rights in Canada*. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan Native Law Centre.
- McLeod, Neal. 1999. "Rethinking Treaty Six in the Spirit of Mistahimaskwa (Big Bear)," *Canadian Journal of Native Studies* 19, No. 1: 69-89.
- McQuillan, Aiden D. 1980. "Creation of Indian Reserves on the Canadian Prairies, 1870-85," *The Geographical Review* 70, No. 4: 379-96.
- Miller, J.R. 1996. *Big Bear (Mistahimusqua) A Biography*. Toronto: ECW Press.
- Milloy, John S. 1988. *The Plains Cree: Trade, Diplomacy and War*. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba Press.
- Morris, Alexander. 2000. *The Treaties of Canada with the Indians of Manitoba and the North-West Territories, Including the Negotiations on Which They Were Based, and Other Information Related Thereto*. 1880; Reprint. Toronto: Prospero Books.
- Mosquito, Solomon et al, eds. 1976. *Treaty Six: Saskatchewan and Alberta, 100 Years, 1876-1976*. Saskatoon: Saskatchewan Indian Cultural College, Curriculum Studies and Research.
- Pratt, Alan. 1993. *Discussion Paper Regarding the Natural Resources Transfer Agreements of the Prairie Provinces: The Numbered Treaties and Extinguishment: A Legal Analysis*. Ottawa: Royal Commission on Aboriginal Peoples.
- Price, Richard T., ed. 1975. *Spirit and Terms of Treaties 6, 7 & 8: Alberta Indian Perspectives*. Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta.

- Price, Richard T., ed. 1976. *New Perspectives on the Alberta Indian Treaties*. Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta.
- Price, Richard T., ed. 1987. *The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties*. Edmonton: Pica Pica Press.
- Ray, Arthur J., J.R. Miller, and Frank Tough, eds. 2000. *Bounty and Benevolence: A History of Saskatchewan Treaties*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press,
- Russell, Dale. 1991. *Eighteenth Century Western Cree and Their Neighbours*. Hull, Quebec: Canadian Museum of Civilization.
- Sliwa, Stephen. 1995. "Treaty Day for the Willow Cree," *Saskatchewan History* 47, No. 1: 3-12.
- Sluman, Norma and Jean Goodwill. 1982. *John Tootoosis: Biography of a Cree Leader, As Told by Norma Sluman and Jean Goodwill*. Ottawa: Golden Dog Press.
- Stobie, Margaret R. 1985. "In the Time of the Making of Treaties," *Manitoba History*, No. 10: 21-29.
- Stonechild, Blair A. and Bill Waiser. 1997. *Loyal Till Death: Indians and the North-West Rebellion*. Calgary: Fifth House Publishers.
- Taylor, John L. 1975. "The Development of an Indian Policy for the Canadian North-West," PhD Thesis, Queen's University.
- Taylor, John L. 1985. *Treaty Research Report: Treaty Six, 1876*. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, 1985.
- Taylor, John L. 1986. *Two Views on the Meaning of Treaties Six and Seven: An Examination of the Significance of Treaties Six and Seven in the Light of Archival Records and Indian Testimony*. Ottawa: Indian Claims Commission.
- Titely, Brian E. 1999. "The Fate of the Sharphead Stoneys." *Alberta History* 39, No. 1: 1-8.
- Tough, Frank. 1992. "Aboriginal Rights Versus the Deed of Surrender: The Legal Rights of Native Peoples and Canada's Acquisition of the Hudson's Bay Company Territory," *Prairie Forum* 17, No. 2: 225-50.
- Venne, Sharon. Treaty 6. Ottawa: Royal Commission on Aboriginal Peoples, 1993.
- Venne, Sharon, et al. 1997. *Honour Bound: Onion Lake and the Spirit of Treaty Six*:

- The International Validity of Treaties with Indigenous Peoples*. Copenhagen, Denmark: International Work Group for Indigenous Affairs.
- Wheaton, Cathy. 1999. "The Role of Treaties in the History of Saskatchewan Indian Politics 1910 to 1992," *Journal of Indigenous Thought* 2, No. 2.
- Whitehouse, Derek. 1994. "The Numbered Treaties: Similar Means to Dichotomous Ends," *Past Imperfect* 3: 25-45.
- Wright, Roland. 1976. *The Implementation of Treaty Six, 1876-191: The Entitlement Question*. Ottawa: Treaty and Aboriginal Rights Research of the Indian Association of Alberta.
- Treaty 8**
- Aasen, Wendy. 1993. *Preliminary Treaty Review Report*. Fort St. John, British Columbia: Treaty 8 Tribal Council.
- . 1994. *The Spirit and Intent of Treaty 8 in the Northwest Territories: As Long As the Sun Shines, the River Flows, and the Grass Grows*. Yellowknife: Treaty 8 Tribal Council.
- Alberta. 1977. *As Long As the Sun Shines, the Rivers Flow and the Grass Grows*. Edmonton: Government of Alberta.
- Bell, C. 1997. "R. v. Badger: One Step Forward and Two Steps Back?" *Constitutional Forum* 8: 21-26.
- Benoit, Charles J., Joan E. Benoit, and Alfred, Gordon J. 1992. *Report on the Indian Understanding of the Negotiation of Treaty 8. Treaty No. 8 and Issues of Taxation. Indians and Taxation: A Historical Study of the Provisions of The Indian Act*. [Case File: Benoit v. HMTQ (1992) (F.C.T.D.)].
- British Columbia Hydro and Power Authority. 1981. *Indian Reserves and Indian Treaty Problems in Northeastern B.C.* British Columbia: British Columbia Hydro and Power Authority.
- Brody, Hugh. 1988. *Maps and Dreams: Indians and the British Columbia Frontier*. Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre.
- Cardinal, Harold. 1993. *Treaty 8 - A Case Study*. Ottawa: Royal Commission on Aboriginal Peoples.
- . 1997. *Treaty 8: Right to Livelihood*.

- Chalmers, John W. 1972. "Inland Journey." *The Beaver*, Vol. 52, No. 2: 52-59.
- Craufurd-Lewis, Michael. "Treaties with Aboriginal Minorities." *Canadian Journal of Native Studies*, Vol. 15, No. 1: 1-59.
- Crerar, Duff, and Jaroslav Petryshyn eds. 2000. *Treaty 8 Revisited: Selected Papers on the 1999 Centennial Conference*. Grand Prairie, AB: Lobstick.
- Daniel, Richard. 1977. "Indian Rights and Hinterland Resources: The Case of Northern Alberta." MA Thesis, University of Alberta..
- DIAND. 1973. *Select Papers: Evolution of Treaty Concepts Generally, Aboriginal Title, Etc.* Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.
- DIAND. "Treaty 8 Renovation: Discussion Paper", 1986. Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development
- Drees, Laura Meijer. 2000. "Citizenship and Treaty Rights: The Indian Association of Alberta and the Canadian Indian Act, 1946-1948." *Great Plains Quarterly* 20, No. 2: 141-58.
- Ens, Gerhard J. 1999. *Treaty Eight and Métis Scrip: A Historical Report*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Ferreira, Darlene A. 1992. "Oil and Lubicons Don't Mix: A Land Claim in Northern Alberta in Historical Perspective." *The Canadian Journal of Native Studies*, Vol. 12, No. 1: 1-35.
- Fisher, Robin. 1977. *Contact and Conflict: Indian-European Relations in British Columbia, 1774-1890*. Vancouver: UBC Press.
- Fumoleau, René. 1975. *As Long as this Land Shall Last: A History of Treaty 8 and Treaty 11, 1870-1939*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Gosse, R., Henderson, J. Y., and R. Carter. 1994. *Continuing Poundmaker and Riel's Quest: A Compilation of the Presentations Made At a Conference on Aboriginal Peoples and Justice*. Saskatoon: Purich Publishing.
- Gulig, Anthony G. 2000. *Shifting Sands: Treaty Rights and Fish and Game Law Enforcement in Northern Saskatchewan, 1920-1945*. Whitewater, Wisconsin: University of Wisconsin Press.
- Irwin, Robert. 2000a. "'A Clear Intention to Effect Such a Modification:' The NRTA and Treaty Hunting and Fishing Rights," *Native Studies Review*: 47-89.

- . 2000b. "Treaty 8: An Anomaly Revisited." *B.C. Studies*, No. 127: 83-101.
- Korsmo, Fae L. 1996. "Claiming Memory in British Columbia: Aboriginal Rights and the State." *American Indian Culture and Research Journal* 20, No. 4.
- Krepakevich, Jerry D., and Tom Radford. 2001. *Honour of the Crown* [Video Recording]. Montreal: National Film Board of Canada.
- Kuhlen, Daniel J. 1985. *A Layperson's Guide to Treaty Rights in Canada*. Saskatoon: University of Saskatchewan Native Law Centre.
- Leonard, David, and Beverly Whelan. eds. 1998. *On the North Trail: The Treaty 8 Diary of O.C. Edwards*. Edmonton: Historical Society of Alberta.
- Madill, Dennis. 1984. *British Columbia Indian Treaties in Historical Perspective*. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.
- . 1987. *Treaty Research Report: Treaty Eight*. Ottawa: Treaties and Historical Research Centre, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.
- The Maguire Group. 1994. *Treaties One to Eleven: A Synthesis of the Study 1971-1976 on the History of the Fulfilment of the Crown's Obligations*. Ottawa: Treaty Policy Directorate, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.
- McCardle, Bennett. 1977. *Indian Land Holdings in Severalty Under Treaty Eight and the Indian Acts, 1899-1930: A Preliminary Discussion*. Ottawa: Treaty and Aboriginal Rights Research of the Indian Association of Alberta.
- McCardle, Bennett, and Richard Daniel. 1976. *Development of Farming in Treaty 8, 1899-1940*. Edmonton: Treaty and Aboriginal Rights Research of the Indian Association of Alberta.
- Melville, J. Bruce. 1981. *Indian Reserves and Indian Treaty Problems in Northeastern B.C.* Vancouver: British Columbia Hydro and Power Authority.
- Murray, Jeffrey S. 1998. "Hard Bargains: The Making of Treaty 8," *Archivist: Magazine of the National Archives of Canada*, No. 117: 38-45.
- Oberle, Frank. 1986. *Treaty & Renovation Discussion Paper*. Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.
- Potyondi, B. 1996. *Treaty No. 8: Economic Benefits and Four Dene First Nations in*

- the Northwest Territories 1899-1965*. Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Treaty Land Entitlement.
- Pratt, Alan. 1993. *Discussion Paper Regarding the Natural Resources Transfer Agreements of the Prairie Provinces: The Numbered Treaties and Extinguishment: A Legal Analysis*. Ottawa: Royal Commission on Aboriginal Peoples.
- Price, Richard T., ed. 1975. *Spirit and Terms of Treaties 6, 7 & 8: Alberta Indian Perspectives*. Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta.
- Price, Richard T., ed. 1976. *New Perspectives on the Alberta Indian Treaties*. Edmonton: Indian Association of Alberta, 1976.
- Price, Richard T., ed. 1987. *The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties*. Edmonton: Pica Pica Press.
- . 1999. *The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties*. 3rd Edition. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Price, Richard T., and Shirleen Smith. 1993-94 "Treaty 8 and Traditional Livelihoods: Historical and Contemporary Perspectives," *Native Studies Review* Vol. 9, No. 1: 51-92.
- Ray, Arthur J. 1995. "Commentary on the Economic History of the Treaty 8 Area," *Native Studies Review* 10, No. 2: 169-95.
- . 1999. "Treaty 8: A British Columbian Anomaly." *B.C. Studies*, No. 123: 5-58.
- . 2000. "Treaty 8 and Expert Witnesses: A Reply to Robert Irwin." *B.C. Studies*, No. 127: 102-07.
- Ray, Arthur J., J.R. Miller, and Frank Tough, eds. 2000. *Bounty and Benevolence: A History of Saskatchewan Treaties*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Ross, M. M., and C. Y. Sharvit. 1998. "Forest Management in Alberta and the Right to Hunt, Trap and Fish Under Treaty 8," *Alberta Law Review* 36: 645-91.
- Russell, Dale. 1991. *Eighteenth Century Western Cree and Their Neighbours*. Hull, Quebec: Canadian Museum of Civilization.
- Tennant, Paul. 1990. *Aboriginal Peoples and Politics: The Indian Land Question in British Columbia*. Vancouver: UBC Press.
- Tough, Frank. 1992. "Aboriginal Rights Versus the Deed of Surrender: The Legal R

- Rights of Native Peoples and Canada's Acquisition of the Hudson's Bay Company Territory," *Prairie Forum* 17, No. 2: 225-50.
- Union of British Columbia Indian Chiefs. 1973. *Notes on the Present State of Understanding and Research on Treaty 8*.
- Voyageur, Cora J. 2000. "A Media Account of the Government's Acquisition of Treaty 8 Lands," *Prairie Forum* 25, No. 2: 271-82.
- Ware, Reuben. 1974. *Treaty 8 in British Columbia*. Vancouver: Union of British Columbia Indian Chiefs.
- Wheaton, Cathy. 1999. "The Role of Treaties in the History of Saskatchewan Indian Politics 1910 to 1992," *Journal of Indigenous Thought* 2, No. 2.
- Whitehouse, Derek. 1994. "The Numbered Treaties: Similar Means to Dichotomous Ends," *Past Imperfect* 3: 25-45.

Early Explorers and Exploration

- Burpee, L.J. 1908a. *The Search for the Western Sea*. London: Alston Rivers, Ltd.
- . 1908b. "An Adventure from Hudson Bay: Being the Journal of a Journey Performed by Matthew Cocking, Second Factor at York Fort in Order to Take a View of the Inland Country, and to Promote the Hudson's Bay Company's Interest, Whose Trade is Diminishing by the Canadians Yearly Intercepting Natives on Their Way to the Settlements, 1772-1773." *Transactions, Royal Society of Canada*, Series 3, Vol. 2, sect. 2.
- Bryan, Liz. 2007. *Country Roads of Alberta: Exploring the Routes Less Travelled*. Surrey, B.C.: Heritage House.
- Cameron, Agnes Deans. 1910. *The New North: Being Some Account of a Woman's Journey Through Canada to the Arctic* (with many illustrations from photographs by the author). New York; London: D. Appleton and Co.
- Cavell, Janice. 2008. *Tracing the Connected Narrative: Arctic Exploration in British Print Culture, 1818-1860*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Cook, A. and C. Holland. 1978. *The Exploration of Northern Canada 500-1920: A Chronology*. Toronto: The Arctic History Press.
- Dempsey, Hugh A. ed. 1996. "Marcus Smith's Journey of 1887," *Alberta History*.

- Doughty, A. G. and G. Lanctot, eds., 1971. *Cheadle's Journal of Trip Across Canada, 1862-1863*. Rutland, VT: C. E. Tuttle Co.
- Douglas, David. 1927. "The Journal of David Douglas." In: *Edward Ermatinger's York Factory Express Journal 1827-1828*. Translated by the Royal Society of Canada, s. II, 1912.
- Footner, Hulbert. 1912. *New Rivers of the North: The Yarn of Two Amateur Explorers*. New York: Outing Publishing. Co.
- Franchère, Gabriel. 1968. *A Voyage to the Northwest Coast of America*. New York: The Citadel Press. [Franchère, G. 1854. *Narrative of a Voyage to the Northwest Coast of America*. J.V. Huntington (ed. & trans.). Redfield, N.Y.]
- Fraser, Esther. 1969. *The Canadian Rockies: Early Travel and Explorations*. Edmonton: Hurtig.
- Freeman, Lewis R. 1928. *The Nearing North*. New York: Dodd, Mead & Company.
- Godsell, Philip H. 2002. *Pilots of the Purple Twilight: The Story of Canada's Early Bush Flyers*. Calgary: Fifth House.
- Gough, B.M. 1985. "Overlanders of 1862." In: *The Canadian Encyclopedia*. Edited by James H. Marsh. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- Hansen-McIntyre, Hugh. 1988. "Treasure Hunters in the Cordillera: Into the Uncharted Wilderness with the Geological Survey of Canada," *The Beaver*. Vol. 68, No. 5: 34-42.
- Henry, A. 1809. *Travels and Adventures in Canada and the Indian Territories, Between the Years 1760 and 1776*. New York: I. Riley.
- Hodgins, Bruce W. and Gwyneth Hoyle. 1994. *Canoeing North into the Unknown: A Record of River Travel: 1874 to 1974*. Toronto: Natural Heritage.
- Hudak, Heather C. 2007. *Explorers*. Calgary: Weigl.
- LeHaiye. 1813. *Diary of A Trip from Montreal to Lake Athabasca in 1811*. Paris. Private Source. Note from Bruce Peel (1973): "The discovery and verification of this books remains a challenge."
- Long, Morden H. 1919. *Knights Errant of the Wilderness: Tales of the Explorers of the Great North-West*. Toronto: The Macmillan Company of Canada, ltd.
- MacGregor, J.G. 1981. *Vision of an Ordered Land: The Story of the Dominion Land Survey*. Western Producer Prairie Books, Saskatoon.

- Mathers, Charles W. 1972. "A Trip to the Arctic Circle," *Alberta Historical Review*: 6-15.
- Petitot, Emile Fortuné Stanislas Joseph, [1838-1917]. 1895. *Descente de la rivière Athabasca en canot d'écorce, en 1876*. Neuchatel: [Société neuchateloise de géographie].
- . 2005. *Travels Around Great Slave and Great Bear Lakes, 1862-1882*. Toronto: Champlain Society.
- Rau, A.E. 1908. "From Edmonton to the Yellowhead Pass." *Canadian Forestry Journal* 4(4): 179.
- Thomas, Don W. 1966. *Men and Meridians: The History of Surveying and Mapping in Canada*. Ottawa: Queen's Printer.
- Tyrrell, J.W. 1897 [1973]. *Across the Subarctics of Canada: A Journey of 3200 Miles by Canoe and Snowshoe Through the Barren Lands*. Toronto: William Briggs.
- Waiser, W. A. 1993. *The New Northwest: The Photographs of the Frank Crean Expeditions, 1908-1909*. Saskatoon: Fifth House.
- Warkentin, John. 1964. *The Western Interior of Canada: A Record of Geographical Discovery, 1612-1917*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Wilson, T.E. 1972. "Trail Blazer of the Canadian Rockies: Thomas E. Wilson" as told by W.E. Rowed. H.H. Dempsey (ed.). Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.

Peter Pond: 1740-1807

- Boreal Institute for Northern Studies. 1974. *The Land of Peter Pond*. Edmonton: University of Alberta [Occasional publication #12,].
- Burpee, L.J. 1928. *Two Western Adventurers, Alexander Henry and Peter Pond*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- Chalmers, John West. 2002. *The Land of Peter Pond*. with assistance from the Staff of the Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, eds. (now the circumpolar institute); G.A. Lester, Cartographer. Edmonton: CCI Press.
- Cooke, Edgar D. 1974 (Winter). "Peter Pond: Forgotten Developer of the North West." *Alberta Historical Review*.
- Gates, Charles M. 1933. *Five Fur Traders of the Northwest: Being the Narrative of Peter*

Pond and the Diaries of John Macdonell, Archibald N. cLeod, Hugh Faries, and Thomas Connor. Minneapolis: Pub. for the Minnesota Society of the Colonial Dames of America, The University of Minnesota Press.

Innis, H.A. 1930. *Peter Pond Fur Trader and Adventurer.* Toronto: Irwin & Gordon Ltd.

Pond, Peter. n.d. *Photostat of Manuscript Fragment of Peter Pond's Journal.* n.p.

Wagner, H.R. 1955. *Peter Pond, Fur Trader & Explorer.* New Haven: Yale University Library.

Samuel Hearne: 1745-1792

Hearne, Samuel. 1796. *Mr. Samuel Hearne, late Cheif [sic] at Prince of Wales's Fort, Hudson's Bay [picture].* Cornhill, London: J. Sewell.

Hearne, Samuel. 1968. *Journals of Samuel Hearne and Philip Turnor between the years 1774 and 1792.* Edited with introduction and notes by J. B. Tyrrell. Facsimile ed. New York: Greenwood Press.

Hearne, Samuel. 2007. *A Journey to the Northern Ocean: The Adventures of Samuel Hearne.* Surrey, BC: TouchWood Eds. Originally published [1795] as *A Journey from the Prince of Wales's Fort in Hudson's Bay to the Northern Ocean in the years 1769, 1770, 1771 1772.*

Houston, Stuart and Mary Houston. 1987. "Samuel Hearne, Naturalist," *The Beaver*: 23-27.

Mowat, Farley. 1990. *Coppermine Journey: An Account of a Great Adventure-Selected from the Journal of Samuel Hearne.* Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.

Nuffield, Edward W. 2001. *Samuel Hearne: Journey to the Coppermine River, 1769-1772.* Vancouver: Haro Books.

Prest, John and Agnes Laut. 1921. "Discovery of the Athabasca Region by Samuel Hearne of HBC, 1769," *The Beaver*. Vol. 1, No. 9: 5-7.

Tyrrell, J.B. 1934. *Journals of Samuel Hearne and Philip Turnor.* Toronto: The Champlain Society.

Philip Turnor: 1752?-1800

Hearne, Samuel. 1968. *Journals of Samuel Hearne and Philip Turnor between the years*

1774 and 1792. Edited with introduction and notes by J. B. Tyrrell. Facsimile ed. New York: Greenwood Press.

Turnor, Philip, 1794. *Result of Astronomical Observations Made in the Interior Parts of North America*. London: Printed for A. Arrowsmith by C. Buckton.

Sir Alexander Mackenzie: 1763-1820

Bryce, George. 1912. *Mackenzie, Selkirk, Simpson*. Toronto: Morang.

Daniels, James Roy. 1971. *Alexander Mackenzie and the North West*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.

Flygare, Halle. 1983. *Sir Alexander Mackenzie Historic Waterways in Alberta*. [in cooperation with Recreation, Parks and Wildlife Foundation of Alberta]. Edmonton: Recreation.

Gough, Barry. 1997. *First Across the Continent: Sir Alexander Mackenzie*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart Ltd.

Hayes, Derek. 2001. *First Crossing: Alexander Mackenzie, His Expedition Across North America and the Opening of the Continent*. Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre.

Lamb, W. Kaye. ed. 1970. *The Journals and Letters of Sir Alexander Mackenzie*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Macdonald, Adrian. 1929. *Sir Alexander Mackenzie*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.

Mackenzie, Alexander Sir. 1801. *Voyages from Montreal, on the River St. Laurence, through the continent of North America, to the Frozen and Pacific Oceans; in the years 1789 and 1793, with a preliminary account of the rise, progress, and present state of the fur trade of that country*. London: printed for T. Cadell, Jun. and W. Davies.

———. 1966. *Exploring the Northwest Territory: Sir Alexander Mackenzie's Journal of a Voyage by Bark Canoe from Lake Athabasca to the Pacific Ocean in the summer of 1789*. Norman, University of Oklahoma Press.

———. 1970. *Journals and Letters*. Edited by W. Kaye Lamb. Toronto: Macmillan for the Haklutt Society.

Maclauries, Mr. [i.e. Mackenzie, Alexander, Sir] 1979. *A narrative or journal of voyages and travels through the north-west continent of America in the years 1789 & 1793*. Fairfield, Wash.: Ye Galleon Press.

- Rumilly, Robert. 1938. *La Verendrye: Mackenzie*. Montreal Editions de l' A.C.-F.
- Smith, James K. 1973. *Alexander Mackenzie, Explorer: the Hero Who Failed*. Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson.
- Wade, Mark Sweeten. 1927. *Mackenzie of Canada: The Life and Adventures of Alexander Mackenzie, Discoverer*. Edinburgh: Blackwood & Sons, Ltd.
- Woolacot, Arthur Phillip. 1927. *Mackenzie and his Voyageurs, by Canoe to the Arctic and the Pacific, 1789-93*. Toronto: J.M. Dent & Sons.
- Wrong, Hume. 1927. *Sir Alexander Mackenzie*. Toronto: Macmillan.

Peter Fidler: 1769-1822

- Allen, Robert. 1983. "Peter Fidler and Nottingham House, Lake Athabasca 1802-1806," No. 69.
- Belyea, Barbara. 2007. *Dark Storm Moving West*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Fidler, Peter [and William Tomison]. 1967. *Saskatchewan Journals and Correspondence: Edmonton House, 1795-1800, Chesterfield House, 1800-1802*. [Journals of William Tomison and Peter Fidler]. Edited with an introduction by Alice M. Johnson. London: Hudson's Bay Record Society.
- Fidler, Peter. 1991. *Southern Alberta bicentennial: A Look at Peter Fidler's Journal: Journal of a Journey Over Land from Buckingham House to the Rocky Mountains in 1792 & 3*. Lethbridge, Alta.: Historical Research Centre.
- Hearne, Samuel. 1968. *Journals of Samuel Hearne and Philip Turnor between the years 1774 and 1792*. Edited with introduction and notes by J. B. Tyrrell. Facsimile ed. New York: Greenwood Press. [Peter Fidler's Journal : 1791-92 from Lake Athabasca to Great Slave Lake].
- Karklins, Karlis. 1983. *Nottingham House: The Hudson's Bay Company in Athabasca, 1802-1806*. Ottawa: National Historic Parks and Sites Branch, Parks Canada.
- MacGregor, J.G. 1966. *Peter Fidler: Canada's Forgotten Surveyor 1769-1822*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart Limited.
- Manitoba Historic Resources Branch. 1984. *Peter Fidler*. Winnipeg: Historic Resources Branch.
- Tyrrell, J. B. 1913. *Peter Fidler, Trader and Surveyor, 1769 to 1822*. Ottawa: [s.n.].

David Thompson: 1770-1857

- Belyea, B. 1994. *David Thompson: Columbia Journals*. Montreal: McGill-Queens University Press.
- Bond, Rowland. 1970. *The Original Northwester: David Thompson and the Native Tribes of North America*. Nine Mile Falls, WA: Spokane House Enterprises.
- Brink, Jack. 2005. "Searching for David Thompson," *Alberta Archaeological Review* No. 42: 15-19.
- Brown, S.R. 2002. "In The Footsteps of David Thompson," *The Beaver*. Vol. 82, No. 3: 13-19.
- Cochrane, Charles Norris. 1924. *David Thompson the Explorer*. Toronto: The MacMilan Company of Canada.
- Coues, Elliot., ed. 1965. *New Light on the Early History of the Greater Northwest: The Manuscript Journals of Alexander Henry and David Thompson 1799-1814*. 2 Vols. Minneapolis: Ross & Haines, Inc.
- Dempsey, Hugh A. 1966 (Winter). "David Thompson on the Peace River, Part 1." *Alberta Historical Review*.
- . 1966 (Spring). "David Thompson on the Peace River, Part 2." *Alberta Historical Review*.
- . 1966 (Autumn). "David Thompson on the Peace River, Part 3." *Alberta Historical Review*.
- Elliott, T.C.E. 1915. Footnote in Tyrrell, J.B. *David Thompson's Narrative*.
- Glover, Richard. 1950. "The Witness of David Thompson," *Canadian Historical Review* 31: 1-25
- Glover, Richard. ed. 1962. *David Thompson's Narrative 1784-1812*. Champlain Society, Toronto.
- Gottfred, Jeff. 1996. "The Location of David Thompson's 'goods shed' on the Athabasca River," *Northwest Journal* 9: 7-14.
- Hopwood, Victor G. 1957. "New Light on David Thompson," *The Beaver*. Vol. 37, No. 1: 26-31.
- . 1957 (Autumn). "More Light on David Thompson," *The Beaver*. Vol. 37, No. 3: 58.

- . 1971. *David Thompson: Travels in Western North America, 1784-1812*. Toronto: MacMillan of Canada.
- Jenish, D'Arcy. 2003. *Epic Wanderer: David Thompson and the Mapping of the Canadian West*. Toronto: Double-Day.
- . 2004. "The Great Map," *The Beaver*. Vol. 84, No. 1: 36-39.
- McCart, Joyce and Peter. 2000. *On the Road With David Thompson*. Calgary: Fifth Press.
- McCourt, J., and P. McCourt. 2000. *On the Road with David Thompson*. Calgary: Fifth House.
- Moreau, William E. ?? "To be fit for Publication": The Editorial History of David Thompson's Travels, 1840-1916. Toronto: *Papers of the Bibliographical Society of Canada*. Vol. 39, No., 2: 15-44.
- Morton, Arthur Silver. 1936. "The North West Company's Columbian Enterprise and David Thompson." *The Canadian Historical Review*. Vol. 17, No. 3: 266-288.
- Nicks, J.S. 1988. "Thompson, David." *The Canadian Encyclopedia*. Vol. 4, p. 2151. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers Ltd.
- Nisbet, Jack. 1994. *Sources of the River: Tracking David Thompson Across Western North America*. Seattle, WA: Sasquatch Books.
- . 2005. *The Mapmaker's Eye: David Thompson on the Columbia Plateau*. Pullman: Washington State University Press.
- Smiley, H.D. 1972. "The Dalliance of David Thompson," *The Beaver*. Vol. 52, No. 3: 40-47.
- Smith, James K. 1971. *David Thompson: Fur Trader, Explorer, Geographer*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.
- Thiessen, Thomas D. and W. Raymond Wood. 1999. *Early fur trade on the Northern Plains [electronic resource] : Canadian traders among the Mandan and Hidatsa Indians, 1738-1818 : the narratives of John Macdonell, David Thompson, Francois-Antoine Larocque, and Charles McKenzie*. Norman, Okla. : University of Oklahoma Press.
- Thompson, David. 1796-1799. "Journey From Falls of St. Mary to G Portage and the Red Deer's Lake. Winter There. June 1, 1798, to March 14, 1799." Unpublished Manuscript, on file, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary.

- . 1799a. "Journey from Fort Augustus to the Forks of the Athabasca River. Manuscript, on file, Public Archives of Canada.
- . 1799b. "Journal of Occurrences at Fort George 1799." Unpublished Manuscript, on file, Public Archives of Canada.
- . 1810-1812. "Journey from Boggy Hole on the Saskatchewan to the Athabasca River Oct. 29th 1810 to June 24th, 1812." Unpublished Manuscript, on file, Glenbow-Alberta Institute, Calgary, 1812.
- . 1916 [reprint]. *David Thompson's Narrative of His Explorations in Western Canada*. Toronto: Champlain Society.
- . 1971. *Travels in Western North America, 1784-1812*. [V.G. Hopgood, ed.] Toronto: Macmillan of Canada.
- . 2007. *Columbia Journals*. Bicentennial ed. Edited by Barbara Belyea. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Thompson, David, 1770-1857. 2009. *The Writings of David Thompson. Volume 1, The Travels, 1850 Version*. Edited with an introduction by William E. Moreau. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press; Seattle: University of Washington Press; Toronto: Champlain Society.
- Twigg, Alan. 2006. *Thompson's Highway: British Columbia's Fur Trade, 1800-1850: The Literary Origins of British Columbia*. Vancouver: Ronsdale Press.
- Tyrrell, J.B. 1887. *Report on a Part of Northern Alberta and Portion of Adjacent Districts of Assiniboia and Saskatchewan. Part E. Annual Report, 1886*. Geological and Natural History Survey of Canada. Montreal: Dawson Bros.
- . 1968. *David Thompson's Narrative of his Explorations in Western America, 1784-1812*. New York: Greenwood Press, Publishers.
- White, M.C. 1950. *David Thompson's Journals Relating to Montana and Adjacent Regions 1808-1812*. Montana State University Press, Missoula.

The Fur Trade

- Bellisle, J. A. 1919. *Co-operation in the Regulation of the Fur Trade* [microform]. Ottawa: [s.n.].
- Berry, Don. 1961. *A Majority of Scoundrels: History of the Rocky Mountain Fur Company*. New York: Harper & Brothers.
- Blackwood, W. 1898. "Romance of the Fur Trade: the companies," Edinburgh:

- Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine.*
- Brown, Jennifer. 1976. "A Demographic Transition in the Fur Trade Country: Family Sizes and Fertility of Company Officers and Country Wives, ca. 1759-1850," *Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology* 6:66-71.
- . 1980. *Strangers in Blood: Fur Trade Families in Indian Country*, Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- . 1990. "The Blind Men and the Elephant: Fur Trade History Revisited," In *Proceedings of the Fort Chipewyan Fort Vermilion Bicentennial Conference*. Edited by Patricia A. McCormack and R. Geoffrey Ironside. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta, 15-19.
- Brown, Jennifer, W. Eccles, and D. Heldman. eds. 1994. *The Fur Trade Revisited: Selected Papers of the Sixth North American Fur Trade Conference, Mackinac Island, Michigan*, 1991. East Lansing, Michigan State University Press, Mackinac Island State Park Commission.
- Brown, J.S.H. 1985. "North West Company." In: *The Canadian Encyclopedia*. Edited by James H. Marsh. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- Brumbach, Hetty Jo, Robert Jarvenpa, and Clifford Buell. 1982. "An Ethnoarchaeological Approach to Chipewyan Adaptations in the Late Fur Trade Period," *Arctic Anthropology* Vol. 19, No. 1:1-49.
- Bryce, George. 1968. *The Remarkable History of the Hudson's Bay Company, Including That of the French Traders of North-Western Canada and of the North-West, XY, and Astor Fur Companies*. New York: B. Franklin.
- Bumsted, J. M. 1999. *Fur Trade Wars: The Founding of Western Canada*. Winnipeg: Great Plains Publications.
- Burpee, L.J. 1914. *Highways of the Fur Trade*. Ottawa: Printed for the Royal Society of Canada.
- Campbell, Marjorie Wilkins. 1973. *The North West Company*. Toronto: The MacMillan Company of Canada Limited.
- . 2002. *The Nor'westers: The Fight for the Fur Trade*. Calgary: Fifth House Publishers.
- Chalmers, John West. 1960. *Fur Trade Governor: George Simpson, 1820-1860*. Edmonton: Institute of Applied Art.
- . 1968 (Winter). "Strangers in Our Midst," *Alberta Historical Review*, Vol. 16

- . 1969a. "Social stratification of the Fur Trade." *Alberta Historical Review*.
- Chittenden, Hiram Martin. 1986. *The American Fur Trade of the Far West*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.
- Clark, W. D. 1971. *Fort Edmonton: Development of a Fur Trade Centre*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources.
- Davidson, Gordon Charles. 1918. *The North West Company*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Duchaussois, Pierre Jean Baptiste. 1937. *Mid Snow and Ice: The Apostles of the North-West*. New Ed. Ottawa: Ottawa University.
- Duquemin, Colin K. 1992. *The Fur Trade in Rupert's Land: Opening up the Canadian Northwest*. St. Catharines, ON: Vanwell Pub.
- Forsman, Michael R. A., and Joseph G. Gallo. 1979. "Approaches to Fur Trade Archaeology, Project 77-22 in Part," In *Archaeology in Alberta 1978*. Edited by J. M. Hillreud, pp. 159-185. Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Occasional Paper 1614. Edmonton: Alberta Culture Historical Resources Division.
- Foster, J.E. 1987. "Indian-White Relations in the Prairie West During the Fur Trade Period—A Compact? In: R.T. Price, ed. *The Spirit of the Alberta Indian Treaties*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press, 181-200.
- Freeman, Lewis R. 1928. *The Nearing North*. New York: Dodd, Mead & Company.
- Fur Trade Commisioner's Office. 1931. "Fur Trade Causerie, Part One," *The Beaver*. Vol. 11, No.3: 375-379.
- Gates, Charles M. 1933. *Five Fur Traders of the Northwest: Being the Narrative of Peter Pond and the Diaries of John Macdonell, Archibald N. cLeod, Hugh Faries, and Thomas Connor*. Minneapolis: Pub. for the Minnesota Society of the Colonial Dames of America, The University of Minnesota Press.
- Gowans, Fred R. 1975. *Rocky Mountain Rendezvous: A History of the Fur Trade Rendezvous, 1825-1840*. Provo, Utah: Brigham Young University Press.
- Goyette, Linda. 2004. *Edmonton in Our Own Words*. University of Alberta Press.
- Greenbie, Sydney. 1929. *Frontiers and Fur Trade*. New York: John Day.
- Griffin, Ray. 1980 (May). "Follow the Voyageurs." *B.C. Outdoors*.
- Hafen, Le Roy Reuben. ed. 1997. *Mountain Men and the Fur Trade of the Far West*.

- Selections*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.
- Hamilton, Martha Wilson. 1995. *Silver in the Fur Trade, 1680-1820*. Chelmsford, MA: Martha Hamilton Publishing.
- Hawker, Peter D. 1995. *Fort Edmonton: Fur Trade Entrepôt, 1795-1870*. Edmonton: Hawk Production.
- Honig, Donald. 1967. *Frontiers of Fortunes: The Fur Trade*. New York, McGraw-Hill.
- Howay, F. W. 1917. *The Fur Trade in Northwestern Development*. New York: Macmillan.
- Huck, Barbara. 2002. *Exploring the Fur Trade Routes of North America: Discover the Highways that Opened a Continent*. Expanded 2nd ed. Winnipeg: Heartland.
- Hudson's Bay Company. 19--. *Hudson's Bay Company: Edmonton*. Manitoba: Hudson's Bay Company Archives, Provincial Archives of Manitoba.
- Hudson's Bay Company. 1977. *The Autumn and Winter catalogue, 1910-1911 of the Hudson's Bay Company*. Winnipeg: Watson and Dwyer.
- Hudson's Bay Company Records for Fort Edmonton on 12 October 1812. Hudson's Bay Company Archives, Winnipeg.
- The Hudson's Bay Record Society. 1955. *Black's Rocky Mountain Journal, 1824*. London.
- Innis, H.A. 1930. *Peter Pond Fur Trader and Adventurer*. Toronto: Irwin & Gordon Ltd.
- . 1999. *The Fur Trade in Canada: An Introduction to Canadian Economic History*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Jackson, John C. 1995. *Children of the Fur Trade: Forgotten Métis of the Pacific Northwest*. Missoula, MT: Mountain Press Pub. Co.
- Judd, Carol M. and Arthur J. Ray. 1980. *Old Trails and New Directions: Papers of the Third North American Fur Trade Conference*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Kaye, Barry. 1982 (Spring). "Flour Mills in the Fur Trade." *Alberta History*.
- Kelsey, Vera. 1956. *Young Men so Daring: Fur Traders who Carried the Frontier West*. Indianapolis: Bobbs-Merrill Co.

- Keighley, Sydney Augustus. 1989. *Trader, Tripper, Trapper: The Life of a Bay Man*. Winnipeg: Rupert's Land Research Centre in co-operation with Watson & Dwyer Pub.
- Kidd, Robert S. 1970. "Fort George and the Early Fur Trade in Alberta." Edmonton: *Provincial Museum and Archives of Alberta Publicaton*, No. 2.
- Kidd, Robert S. 1987. *Archaeological Investigations at the Probable Site of the First Fort Edmonton or Fort Augustus, 1795 to Early 1800s*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism Historical Resources Division
- Klimko, Olga. 1994. *The Archaeology of Land Based Fur Trade Posts in Western Canada: A History and Critical Analysis*, Ph.D. Dissertation, Department of Archaeology, Simon Fraser University, Vancouver.
- Klyne, F.M. 1829. "Jasper House Post Journal, 1829-30," B.94/a02, HBC (Film IM 65), PAC. Archives of the Hudson's Bay Company, Winnipeg.
- Krech III, Shepard. 1981. "Throwing Bad Medicine": Sorcery, Disease and the Fur Trade Among Kutchin and Other Northern Athapaskans: 73-108 in *Indians, Animals and the Fur Trade: A Critique of Keepers of the Game*. Athens: University of Georgia Press.
- . 1983. "The Influence of Disease and the Fur Trade on Arctic Drainage Lowlands Dene, 1800–1850," *Journal of Anthropological Research* 39: 123-146.
- Laut, Agnes. 1914. *The "Adventurers of England" on the Hudson Bay: A Chronicle of the Fur Trade in the North*. Toronto: Glasgow, Brook & Co.
- Livesey, Robert. 2005. *The Fur Traders*. Markham, Ont.: Fitzhenry & Whiteside.
- Mackenzie, Alexander, Sir. 1801. *Voyages from Montreal, on the River St. Laurence, through the continent of North America, to the Frozen and Pacific Oceans: in the years 1789 and 1793, with a preliminary account of the rise, progress, and present state of the fur trade of that country*. London: printed for T. Cadell, Jun. and W. Davies.
- Mackenzie, Alexander, Sir. 1801. *Voyages from Montreal, on the River St. Laurence, through the continent of North America, to the Frozen and Pacific Oceans; in the years 1789 and 1793, with a preliminary account of the rise, progress, and present state of the fur trade of that country*. London: printed for T. Cadell, Jun. and W. Davies.
- MacKinnon, C.S. 1980. "Some Logistics of Portage La Loche (Methy)," *Prairie Forum*.

- Martin, Calvin. 1978. *Keepers of the Game: Indian-Animal Relationships and the Fur Trade*. Berkeley: University of California Press.
- Martin, Joe. 1944. *Canadian Wilderness Trapping*. Toronto: Fur Trade Journal of Canada.
- McCormack, Patricia Alice. 1982. *Fur Trade Society to Class Society: The Development of Ethnic Stratification at Fort Chipewyan, Alberta*. [s.l. : s.n.].
- McCullough, E.J. and M. Maccagno. 1985. "The Fur Reports of Lac La Biche." Unpublished Report, on file, Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Edmonton.
- . 1991. *Lac La Biche and the Early Fur Traders*. Edmonton: Canadian Circumpolar Institute.
- McKay, W.A. 1965. The Story of the Canadian Fur Trade. *The Beaver*. Part 1. Vol. 44, No. 4: 20-25; Part 2. Vol. 45: 24-29; Part 3. Vol. 45, No. 2: 36-41; Part 4. Vol. 45, No. 3: 12-16.
- Merk, F. Ed. 1968. *Fur Trade and Empire: George Simpson's Journal* (rev. ed.) Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Merriman, R. O. 1926. *The Bison and the Fur Trade*. Kingston: Jackson Press. Cambridge: Harvard University Press.
- Milne, J. 1975. *Trading for Milady's Furs*. Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Books.
- Moberly, H.J. 1921-1922. "Reminiscences of an HBC Fur Trade Factor [Pts. 1-13]," *The Beaver*. Part 1: Vol. 2, No. 1 (October 1921); Part 2: Vol. 2, No. 2 (November 1921); Part 3: Vol. 2, No. 3 (December 1921); Part 4: Vol. 2, No. 4 (January 1922); Part 5: Vol. 2, No. 5 (February 1922); Part 6: Vol. 2, No. 6 (March 1922); Part 7: Vol. 2, No. 7 (April 1922); Part 8: Vol. 2, No. 8 (May 1922); Part 9: Vol. 2, No. 9 (June 1922); Part 10: Vol. 2, No. 10 (July 1922); Part 11: Vol. 2, No. 11 (August 1922); Part 12: Vol. 2, No. 12 (September 1922); Part 13: Vol. 3, No. 1 (October 1922).
- . 1924. "The First Trail to Jasper House." *The Beaver* (March).
- . 1929. *When Fur Was King*. Toronto: J.M. Dent & Sons.
- Morse, Eric. 1971. *Fur Trade Canoe Routes of Canada, Then and Now*. 2nd ed. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Nault, Jennifer. 2007. *Hudson's Bay Company*. Calgary: Weigl Educational Publishers.
- . 2007. *North West Company*. Calgary: Weigl Educational Publishers.

- Newman, Peter Charles. 1987. *Caesars of the Wilderness: Company of Adventurers* Vol. III. Markham, ON; Viking Penguin Books.
- . 1985. *Company of Adventurers*. Toronto: Penguin Books.
- . 1989. *Empire of the Bay An Illustrated History of the Hudson's Bay Company*. Markham, Ont: Viking Studio.
- Noel, Lynn, 1999 "Women of the Fur Trade Era," in Sue Engebretson & Becky Barry, *The Voyageurettes*, Adventure Publications, MN.
- Nute, Grace Lee. 1931. *The Voyageur*. New York: D. Appleton & Company.
- . 1941. *The Voyageur's Highway*. St. Paul.
- O-GE-MAS-ES (Little Clerk). 1922. "The Life of Ne-Gua-Nan-I-Sew," *The Beaver*. Vol. 2, No.8: 12-15.
- O'Meara, Walter, 1968. *Daughters of the Country: The Women of the Fur Traders and Mountain Men*. Toronto: Harcourt Brace.
- Pannekoek, F. 1987. *The Fur Trade and Western Canadian Society 1670-1870*. Ottawa: Canadian Historical Association.
- Parker, James McPherson. 1967. *The Fur Trade of Fort Chipewyan on Lake Athabaska, 1778-1835*. Edmonton: University of Alberta, Dept. of History.
- . 1976. "The Struggle for the Athabasca," In: *Essays on Western History, in Honour of Lewis Gwynne Thomas*. Edited by Lewis H. Thomas. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- . 1987. *Emporium of the North: Fort Chipewyan and the Fur Trade to 1835*. Regina: Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism/Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Patterson, Raymond M. 1960 (Winter). "We Clomb [sic] the Pathless Pass," *The Beaver*. Vol. 40, No. 3: 51-55.
- Payne, Michael. 2004. *The Fur Trade in Canada*. Toronto: J. Lorimer.
- Pendleton, George. 1931. "HBC Posts, Mackenzie River-Athabasca District, No.1-Fort Edmonton," *The Beaver*. Vol. 10, No. 4: 179-182.
- . 1931. "HBC Posts, Mackenzie River-Athabasca District, No.2-Fort Chipewyan," *The Beaver*. Vol. 11, No. 1: 228-231.

- . 1931. "HBC Posts, Mackenzie River-Athabasca District, No. 3-Hudson Hope," *The Beaver*. Vol. 11, No. 2: 285-288.
- Phillips, Paul C. 1961. *The Fur Trade*. 1st Edition. Norman, University of Oklahoma Press.
- Podruchny, Carolyn. 2002. "Baptizing Novices: Ritual Moments among French Canadian Voyageurs in the Montreal Fur Trade, 1780-1821," *Canadian Historical Review* Vol. 83, No. 2: 165-195.
- . 2006. *Making the Voyageur World: Travelers and Traders in the North American Fur Trade*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.
- Provincial Museum and Archives of Alberta. 1971. *Fort George: A North West Company Fur Trade Post in Alberta*. Edmonton: Provincial Museum & Archives of Alberta.
- Pyszczyk, Heinz W. 1985. The Role of Material Culture in the Structure of Fur Trade Society. In: *Status, Structure and Stratification: Current Archaeological Reconstructions*, edited by M. Thompson, M.T. Garcia and F. Kense: 399-406. Calgary: The Archaeological Association of the University of Calgary.
- . 1997. "The Use of Fur Trade Goods by the Plains Indians, Central and Southern Alberta, Canada," *Canadian Journal of Archaeology*, 21:1: 45-84.
- Ray, Arthur J. 1974. *Indians in the Fur Trade: Their Role as Hunters, Trappers and Middlemen in the Lands Southwest of Hudson Bay, 1660-1870*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1978. "History and Archaeology of the Northern Fur Trade," *American Antiquity*, Vol. 43, No. 1.
- . 1990. *The Canadian Fur Trade in the Industrial Age*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Reid, John Phillip. 1999. *Patterns of Vengeance: Crosscultural Homicide in the North American Fur Trade*. [Pasadena, Calif.?] : Ninth Judicial Circuit Historical Society.
- Rich, Edwin Ernest. 1928. "Athabasca, 1938," *The Beaver*. Vol. 18, No. 3: 12-13.
- . 1958. *The History of the Hudson's Bay Company 1670-1870*. 3 Vols. London: The Hudson's Bay Record Society.
- . 1967. *The Fur Trade and the North West to 1857*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.

- Rich, E.E. ed. 1938. *Journal of Occurances in the Athabasca Department by George Simpson, 1820 and 1821, and Report*. Toronto: Champlain Society.
- . ed. 1939. “Colin Robertson’s Correspondence Book, September 1817 to September 1822.” Toronto: The Champlain Society.
- . ed. 1951. *Cumberland House Journals and Inland Journal 1775-82*. First Series. 1775-79. London: The Hudson’s Bay Record Society.
- . ed. 1952. *Cumberland House Journals and Inland Journal 1775-82*. Second Series. London: The Hudson’s Bay Record Society.
- . ed. 1967. *The Fur Trade and the North West to 1857*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Richter, Roland. *North West Voyageurs: Abenteuer Kanada*. 1980. Dortmund: Conradi-Verlag.
- Rogers, Major. 2004. *Plan and Estimate of the Fur and Peltry Trade in the Back Country* [electronic resource]. Alexandria, VA: Alexander Street Press.
- Ross, Alexander. 1855. *The Fur Traders of the Far West: A Narrative of Adventures in the Oregon and Rocky Mountains*. Vol. II. Smith, Elder, London. Also published [?] in 1924 under the title: *The Fur Hunters of the Far West*. Edited with historical introduction and notes by Milo Milton Quaife Chicago: R.R. Donnelley & Sons Company.
- Rude, Darlene. 2004. *From the Fur Trade to Free Trade: Forestry and First Nations Women in Canada*. Ottawa, ON: Status of Women Canada.
- Ruggles, R.I. 1984. “Mapping the Interior Plains of Rupert’s Land by the Hudson’s Bay Company to 1870.” *Great Plains Quarterly*, Vol. 4, No. 3: 152-165.
- . 1991. *A Country So Interesting: The Hudson’s Bay Company and Two Centuries of Mapping: 1670-1870*. Montreal and Kingston: McGill-Queen’s University Press.
- Russell, Carl Parcher. 1957. *Guns on the Early Frontiers: A History of Firearms From Colonial Times Through the Years of the Western Fur Trade*. New York: Bonanza.
- Sachs, John C. 1933? *Furs and the Fur Trade*. 3d Edition. Toronto: I. Pitman & sons.
- Selkirk, Earl of. 1816. *A Sketch of the British Fur Trade in North America with*

- Observations Relative to the North-West Company of Montreal*. London: James Ridgway.
- Simmons, Deidre. 2007. *Keepers of the Record The History of the Hudson's Bay Company Archives*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Simpson, Thomas. 1843. *Narrative of the Discoveries on the North Coast of America: Effected by the Officers of the Hudson's Bay Company During the Years 1836-39*. London: Richard Bentley.
- Smandych, Russell and Rick Linden. 2005. "Administering Justice Without the State: Study of the Private Justice System of the Hudson's Bay Company to 1800," In: *Crime and deviance in Canada: Historical Perspectives*. Edited by Chris McCormick and Len Green. Toronto: Canadian Scholars Press.
- Smith, G. (n.d.) "The 1978 Excavation of the Hudson's Bay Company Fur Trade Post at Lac La Biche, Alberta." Unpublished Manuscript, on file, with author.
- Smith, James K. 1971. *David Thompson: Fur Trader, Explorer, Geographer*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.
- . 1973. *Alexander Mackenzie, Explorer: the Hero Who Failed*. Toronto: McGraw-Hill Ryerson.
- Smythe, T. 1968. "Thematic Study of the Fur Trade in the Canadian West: 1670-1870." Unpublished Manuscript, on file, Historic Sites and Monuments Board of Canada, Ottawa.
- Stevens, Wayne Edson. 1928. *The Northwest Fur Trade, 1763-1800*. Urbana, The University of Illinois.
- Sunder, John E. 1968. *Joshua Pilcher: Fur Trader and Indian Agent*. Normal: University of Oklahoma Press.
- Thiessen, Thomas D. and W. Raymond Wood. 1999. *Early fur trade on the Northern Plains: Canadian traders among the Mandan and Hidatsa Indians, 1738-1818 : the narratives of John Macdonell, David Thompson, Francois-Antoine Larocque, and Charles McKenzie*. Norman, Okla.: University of Oklahoma Press.
- Thistle, Paul Clifford. 1986. *Indian-European Trade Relations in the Lower Saskatchewan River Region to 1840*. Winnipeg: University of Manitoba Press.
- Tough, Frank. 1992. "Aboriginal Rights Versus the Deed of Surrender: The Legal Rights of Native Peoples and Canada's Acquisition of the Hudson's Bay Company Territory," *Prairie Forum* 17, No. 2: 225-50.

- Twigg, Alan. 2006. *Thompson's Highway: British Columbia's Fur Trade, 1800-1850: The Literary Origins of British Columbia*. Vancouver: Ronsdale Press.
- Tyrrell, J.B. ed. 1931. *Documents relating to the early history of Hudson Bay with introduction and notes, by by Tyrrell, Joseph Burr, 1858-1957., Silvy, Antoine, 1638-1711., Marest, Gabriel, 1662-1714., Bacqueville de La Potherie, M. de (Claude-Charles Le Roy), 1668-1738., Oldmixon, Mr. (John), 1673-1742.* Toronto: The Champlain Society.
- Umfreville, Edward. 1954. *The Present State of the Hudson's Bay Containing a Full Description of That Settlement, and the Adjacent Country*. Toronto: The Ryerson Press.
- Vandiveer, Clarence A. 1929. *The Fur-Trade and Early Western Exploration*. Cleveland: The Arthur H. Clark Company.
- Van Kirk, S. 1980. "Many Tender Ties:" *Women in Fur Trade Society, 1670-1812*. Winnipeg: Watson & Owyer Publishing Ltd.
- . 1984. "The Role of Native Women in the Fur Trade Society of Western Canada, 1670-1830," *Frontiers: A Journal of Women Studies* Vol. 7, No. 3: 9-13.
- Vizenor, Gerald Robert. 1978. *Wordarrows: Indians and Whites in the New Fur Trade*. Minneapolis : University of Minnesota Press.
- Wagner, H.R. 1955. *Peter Pond, Fur Trader & Explorer*. New Haven: Yale University Library.
- Wallace, J.N. 1922. "Early Fur Trading Posts in Alberta," *Alberta Land Surveyors' Association Annual Report*, pp. 1-7.
- Wallace, W. Stewart. 1954. *The Pedlars from Quebec and Other Papers on the Nor'Westers*. Toronto: The Ryerson Press.
- . ed. 1968. *Documents Relating to the North West Company*. New York: Greenwood Press.
- Watech, Abel. 2007. *Payepot and His People*. Regina: University of Regina, Canadian Plains Research Center.
- White, Bruce. M. 1999. "The Woman Who Married a Beaver: Trade Patterns and Gender Roles in the Ojibwa Fur Trade," *Ethnohistory* Vol. 46, No. 1: 109-147.
- Williams, G. 1969. *Andrew Graham's Observations on Hudson's Bay 1767-91*. London: The Hudson's Bay Record Society.

- Williams, Glyndwr. Ed. 1975. *Hudson's Bay Miscellany, 1670–1870*. Winnipeg: Hudson's Bay Record Society.
- Williamson, David T. Summer, 1977. "Tom Kerr: A Mighty Trader Was He." *Alberta History*.
- Willson, Beckles. 1899. *The Great Company: Being a History of the Honourable Company of Merchants-Adventures Trading into Hudson's Bay*. Toronto: Copp, Clark.
- Wilson, Kathryn, J. 1980. *Feminine Fur Trade Fashions: 1800-1840*. Chadron, Neb. : The Fur Press.
- Woodcock, George. 1970. *The Hudson's Bay Company*. Toronto: Collier-Macmillan.
- Woodward, Arthur. 1970. *The Denominators of the Fur Trade: An Anthology of Writings on the Material Culture of the Fur Trade*. Pasadena, Calif.: Socio-Technical Publications.
- Yerbury, J.C. 1986. *The Subarctic Indians and the Fur Trade, 1680-1860*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.

Forts and Trading Posts

- Adams, Stuart. 1998. *Fort Chipewyan: Way of Life Study. Summary Report*. Vancouver: Stuart Adams & Associates.
- Chalmers, John West. 1974. "Fort Chipewyan—On the Edge of History," *Heritage*. Vol. 2, No. 6: 1-4, 18.
- . 1976 (Winter). "Season's Greetings from Fort Chip." *Alberta History*.
- Chalmers, John West. ed. 1971. *On the Edge of the Shield. Fort Chipewyan and its Hinterland*. Edmonton: The Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta, Occasional Papers, No. 7.
- Clark, W. D. 1971. *Fort Edmonton: Development of a Fur Trade Centre*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources.
- Cline, Beverly Fink. 2007. *Forts and Trading Posts*. Calgary: Weigl Educational Publishers.
- Comfort, D. J. 1973-74. *Meeting Place of Many Waters: A History of Fort McMurray*.

- Fort McMurray, AB: Comfort Enterprises.
- . 1974. *Ribbon of Water and Steamboats North: A History of Fort McMurray, 1870-1898*.
- . 1975 (Autumn). "William McMurray: The Name Behind the Fort," *Alberta History*.
- MacDonald, George Heath. 1954. *Fort Augustus-Edmonton*. Edmonton: The Douglas Printing Co. Ltd.
- Moodie, D. Wayne, Victor P. Lytwyn, Barry Kaye. "Trading Posts, 1774-1821," In: *Historical Atlas of Canada, Vol. I: From the Beginning to 1800*. Edited by R. Cole Harris, Plate 62.

The Klondike

- Adams, William Hampton and David R. Brauner. 1998? *A Bibliography for the History of Skagway, Alaska, and the Klondike Gold Rush*. [S.l. : W.H. Adams and D.R. Brauner.
- Adney, Tappan E. 1994. [1900] *The Klondike Stampede* Vancouver: UBC Press.
- Andrews, C.L. 1942 (April). "Muskeg Trail to Alaska," *Alaska Life*.
- Anonymous. 1989. *How to Get to the Klondike: the safest, best and cheapest route to the Yukon is via the Regina, Prince Albert, Green Lake, and Fort MacMuray water Routes*. Prince Albert.
- Backhouse, Frances. 1995. *Women of the Klondike*. Vancouver: Whitecap Books.
- Berton, Pierre. 1972. *Klondike: The Last Great Gold Rush, 1896-1899*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- . 1993. *Before the Gold Rush*. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart.
- . 2005. [1997] *The Klondike Quest: A Photographic Essay, 1897-1899*. Erin, ON: Boston Mills Press.
- Blower, James. 1971. *Gold Rush*. Alberta Heritage Edition. Toronto: Ryerson.
- Booth, Michael R. 1962. "Gold Rush Theatres of the Klondike," *The Beaver*, Vol. 41, No. 4, 32-37.
- Bowles, Frances. ed. 1984. *Across Canada to the Klondyke: Being the Journal of a Ten*

- Thousand Mile Tour Through the "Great North West," July 19th-October 13th, 1900.* By "Col. d Streamer" (Harry Graham). Toronto: Methuen.
- Bradley, George B. 1898. *The Klondike-Peace Gold Fields*. Ottawa: [s.n.]
- Burry, Shierlaw. 1973. "Edmonton to the Klondike," *Alberta Historical Review*: 20-25.
- Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions. 1981. *Calgary Route to the Klondyke Gold Fields: description of routes: miners' and prospectors' outfitting guide*. Library Division, Provincial Archives of British Columbia. Ottawa: Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions.
- Camsell, Charles. 1955. *Son of the North*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- Cohen, Stan. 1977. *The Streets Were Paved with Gold: A Pictorial History of the Klondike Gold Rush 1896-1899*. Missoula, Mont.: Pictorial Histories.
- Cole, E.L. 1955 (March, April, May). "The Deadly Edmonton Trail," *Alaska Sportsman*
- Constantine, C. P. *I was a Mountie: The Adventures of a Trooper of Canada's famed Mounted Police*. New York: Exposition Press.
- Dafoe, John W. 1931. *Clifford Sifton in Relation to His Times*. Toronto.
- Dawson, G.M. 1897. "Historical Notes on events in the Yukon District," *Review of Historical Publications Relating to Canada, II*.
- Duncan, Jennifer. 2004. *Frontier Spirit: The Brave Women of the Klondike*. Anchor Canada Edition. Toronto: Anchor Canada.
- Firth, John. 2004. *River Time: Racing the Ghosts of the Klondike Rush*. Edmonton: NeWest Press.
- Gould, John A. 2001. *Frozen Gold: A Treatise on Early Klondike Mining Technology, Methods and History*. Missoula, Mont.: Pictorial Histories Pub. Co.
- Haskell, William B. 1998. *Two years in the Klondike and Alaskan gold-fields, 1896-1898: A Thrilling Narrative of Life in the Gold Mines and Camps*. Fairbanks, Alaska: University of Alaska Press.
- Hubbard, William Keith. 1969. *The Klondike Gold Rush in Literature, 1896-1930*. London, Canada.
- Hunt, William R. 2009. *North of 53°: The Wild Days of the Alaska-Yukon Mining Frontier, 1870-1914*. Fairbanks: University of Alaska Press.

- Innis, H.A. 1936. *Settlement and the Mining Frontier*. Toronto: ??
- Kirk, Robert C. 1898. *Twelve Months in Klondike*. London: W. Heinemann
- Ladue, Joseph. 1897 (pamphlet). *Klondyke Nuggets*.
- Lee, Alfred E. 1976. *The Liard Trail to the Klondike: Alfred E. Lee's Diary of an Expedition from Edmonton, 1897-1898*. Montreal: Katharine Lee Gilliland.
- Lynch, Jeremiah. 1967. *Three Years in the Klondike*. Chicago, R. R. Donnelly.
- MacGregor, J.G. 1970. *The Klondike Rush Through Edmonton, 1897-1898*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Mattison, David. 1997. "Photo Nuggets: Klondike Photographers," *The Beaver*. Vol. 77, No. 5: 33-39.
- Milvain, R.H. 1972 (Winter). "On the way to the Klondyke." *Alberta Historical Review*: 18-27.
- Moberly, Walter. 1898. *Eight Routes to the Klondyke: with tables of distances, cost of outfits, map of routes, and other information*. Winnipeg: Colonist Print. & Pub. Co.
- Mole, Rich. 2006. *Gold Fever: The Adventures and Escapades of the Klondike Gold Rush*. Canmore: Altitude Pub. Canada.
- . 2009. *Rebel Women of the Gold Rush: Extraordinary Achievements and Daring Adventures*. Surrey, B.C.: Heritage House.
- Morrison, William R. 1989. *Interpreting Canada's North: Selected Readings*. Toronto: Copp Clark Pitman.
- Morse, Kathryn. 2003. *The Nature of Gold: An Environmental History of the Klondike Gold Rush*. Seattle: University of Washington Press.
- National Film Board of Canada. 1962. *North West Mounted Police [filmstrip]: Klondike Gold Rush*. Montreal?: Produced for the Royal Canadian Mounted Police by the National Film Board of Canada.
- Ogilvie, William. 1898. *The Klondike Official Guide: Canada's Great Gold Field, The Yukon District*. Toronto: Hunter, Rose; London: W.H. Smith.
- Peake, Frank A. 1965. "Church and Society During the Klondike Gold Rush," *Historical Magazine of the Protestant Episcopal Church*, Vol. 34.

Pringle, Heather. 1996 (Nov/Dec). "People of the Klondike Stampeded By the Rush," *Canadian Geographic*: 36-48.

Smith, E. M. 1970. *Arctic Bibliography*. Ottawa: Canadian Library Association.

Stumer, Harold Merritt. 1978. *This Was Klondike Fever. 1st ed.* Seattle: Superior Publishing Co.

Wilson, Graham. 1997. *The Klondike Gold Rush: Photographs From 1896-1899*. Whitehorse, Yukon: Wolf Creek Books.

Winslow, Kathryn. 1953. *Big Pan-Out, The Klondike Story*. London, The Travel Book Club.

Wright, R.T. 2000. *Overlanders: The Epic Cross-Canada Trek for Gold, 1858-1862*. Winter Quarter Press, Williams Lake, BC.

Zaslow, Morris. 1971. *The Opening of the Canadian North, 1870–1914*. Toronto: McClelland and Steward.

The Royal North-West Mounted Police

Alberta. Provincial Archives. Kristjan Fjeldsted Anderson. "Papers, 1894-1932".

Artigue, Jean d'. 1973. *Six Years in the Canadian North-West*. Belleville: Ont. Mika.

Atkin, Ron. 1973. *Maintain the Right: The Early History of the North West Mounted Police, 1873-1900*. New York: John Day.

Band, Ian. 1998. "Power Surge," *The Beaver* Vol. 78, No 3: 19-23.

Beahen, William and Stanley Horrall. 1998. *Red Coats on the Prairies: The North-West Mounted Police, 1886-1900*. Regina: Centax Books.

Chambers, Ernest J. 1906. *The Royal North-West Mounted Police: A Corps History*. Souvenir edition. Montreal-Ottawa: The Mortimer Press.

Chambers, Ernest J. and Dave Fleshman. 1992. *History of the 65th Mount Royal Rifles in Western Canada*. Montreal: Guertin..

Constantine, C. P. *I was a Mountie: The Adventures of a Trooper of Canada's famed Mounted Police*. New York: Exposition Press.

Curwood, James Oliver. 1958. *Steele of the Royal Mounted: A story of the great Canadian Northwest*. Winnipeg : Harlequin Books.

- Deane, R. Burton. 1916. *Mounted Police Life in Canada: A Record of Thirty-One Years' Service*. London: Cassell.
- Decker, Jody. F. 1998. "Surgeons' Stories," *The Beaver*. Vol. 78, No. 3: 24-27.
- Dempsey, Hugh A. 1976. *Men in Scarlet*. Calgary: Historical Society of Alberta/McClelland and Stewart West.
- Denny, Cecil E. 1972. *The Law Marches West*. Toronto: J. M. Dent.
- Donkin, John G. 1973. *Trooper and Redskin in the far North-West: Recollections of Life in the North-West Mounted Police, Canada, 1884-1888*. 1973. Toronto: Coles.
- Dwight, Charles P. 1892. *Life in the North-West Mounted Police and Other Sketches*. Toronto: National Pub. Co.
- Fetherstonhaugh, R.C. 1938. *The Royal Canadian Mounted Police, 1892-1949*. New York, Carrick & Evans, inc.
- Godsell, Philip H. 1939. *They Got Their Man: On Patrol with the North West Mounted*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- . 1939. *The Vanishing Frontier: A Saga of Traders, Mounties and Men of the Last North West*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- Goldring, Philip. 1979. *The First Contingent: The North-West Mounted Police, 1873-74*. Ottawa: National Historic Parks and Sites Branch.
- Graybill, Andrew R. 2007. *Policing the Great Plains: Rangers, Mounties, and the North American Frontier, 1875-1910*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.
- Haydon, A.L. 1971. *The Riders of the Plains, 1873-1910*. Edmonton: Hurtig Press.
- Hewitt, Steve. 2006. *Riding to the Rescue: The Transformation of the RCMP in Alberta and Saskatchewan, 1914-1939*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Horrall, S. W. 1980. "The Royal North-West Mounted Police and Labour Unrest in Western Canada, 1919," *Canadian Historical Review* Vol. 61, No. 2: 169-190.
- Kelly, Nora and William. 1973. *The Royal Canadian Mounted Police*, Edmonton: Hurtig.
- Longstreth, T.M. 1928. *The Silent Force*. New York: Century.
- . 1928. *Sons of the Mounted Police*. New York: Century.

- . 1933. *In Scarlet and Plain Clothes, The History of the Mounted Police*. Toronto: Macmillan.
- . 1974. *The Scarlet Force: The Making of the Mounted Police*. Toronto: Macmillan of Canada.
- Macleod, Rod. 1976. *The North-West Mounted Police and Law Enforcement, 1873-1905*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Morrison, William R. 1985. *Showing the Flag: The Mounted Police and Canadian Sovereignty in the North, 1894–1925*. Vancouver: UBC Press.
- National Film Board of Canada. 1962. *North West Mounted Police [filmstrip]: Klondike Gold Rush*. Montreal?: Produced for the Royal Canadian Mounted Police by the National Film Board of Canada.
- North West Mounted Police (Canada). 1975. *A Chronicle of the Canadian West: North-West Mounted Police Report for 1875*. Calgary, Alta.: Historical Society of Alberta.
- Parsons, Vic. 1998. "Francis. J. Dickens: Profile of an Officer," *The Beaver*. Vol. 78:3: 13-17.
- Snyder, A.E. 1897. "Patrol report: Inspector A.E. Snyder, Edmonton to Jasper House, Athabasca District, 1897. North West Mounted Police, Edmonton, 28 October, 1897." Appendix M, Sessional Papers (No. 15)A. 1898.
- Steele, Harwood Elmes Robert. 1947. *To Effect An Arrest: Adventures of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- . 1961. *The Red Serge: Stories of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- . 1969. *The RCMP*. Toronto: Clarke, Irwin; London: Cape.
- Steele, S.B. 1915. *Forty Years in Canada*. Winnipeg: Russell Lang.
- Turner, J.P. 1950. *The North West Mounted Police, 1873-1893*. 2 Volumes. Ottawa: The King's Printer.
- Waiser, W.A. 1979. "The North-West Mounted Police in 1874-1889: A Statistical Study," No. 117.

Ethnicity and Culture

Alberta. Provincial Archives. Ann Anderson, "Métis Life in St. Albert in the 1900's".

Alberta Society of Artists: The First 70 Years. 1986. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.

Auger, Emily E. 2005. *The Way of Inuit Art: Aesthetics and History in and Beyond the Arctic*. Jefferson, N.C.: McFarland.

Brasser, T.J., 1975. "Métis Artisans," *The Beaver*, Vol. 55, No. 2: 52-57.

Brunvand, Jan Harold. 1974. *Norwegian Settlers in Alberta*. Ottawa, National Museum of Man, National Museums of Canada.

Carter, Velma. 1981. *The Window of our Memories*. St. Albert: B.C.R. Society of Alberta.

———. 1993. *The Black Canadians: Their History and Contributions*. Revised Edition. Edmonton: Reidmore Books.

Chester, David W. 1977. *Athabasca: Exhibitions from the University Collections*. Edmonton: University of Alberta.

Dawson, Carl A. 1936. *Group Settlement: Ethnic Communities in Western Canada*. Toronto: Macmillan of Canada.

Dempsey, Hugh A. 1981. *Western Alienation in Perspective*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.

———. 1991. *Treasures of the Glenbow Museum*. Calgary: Glenbow.

Glenbow Museum. 1984. *Images of the Land: Canadian Block Prints, 1919-1945*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.

———. 1985. *Metis: A Glenbow Museum Exhibition: [exhibition catalogue]*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.

———. 1987. *The Spirit Sings: Artistic Traditions of Canada's First Peoples*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.

Haffenreffer Museum of Anthropology. 1989. *Out of the North: The Subarctic Collection of the Haffenreffer Museum of Anthropology*. Bristol, Rhode Island: Haffenreffer Museum of Anthropology, Brown University.

- Hanchuk, Rena Jeanne. 1999. *The Word and Wax: A Medical Folk Ritual Among Ukrainians in Alberta*. Edmonton: Huculak Chair of Ukrainian Culture and Ethnography: Canadian Institute of Ukrainian Studies Press.
- Harrison, Julia D. 1987. *The Spirit Sings: Artistic Traditions of Canada's First Peoples*. Toronto: McClelland & Stewart; Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- Hiller, Harry H. 2009. *Second Promised Land: Migration to Alberta and the Transformation of Canadian Society*. Montreal, Ithaca : McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Holloway, Peter W. 2004. *Ukrainian Traditional Folklore: A Part of Our Folk Heritage*. Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Kaye, Frances W. 2003. *Hiding the Audience: Viewing Arts & Art Institutions on the Prairies*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.
- Lehr, John. 1976. *Ukrainian Vernacular Architecture in Alberta*. Edmonton, AB: Historical Resources Division.
- Makarenko, Fern Lybarger. 2007. *From Steppes to Stumps: The Viteychuks and Makarenkos in Western Canada*. Calgary: OM Press.
- Marchildon, Gregory P. 2009. *Immigration and Settlement, 1870-1939*. Regina: University of Regina: CPRC Press.
- Martynowych, Orest T. 1991. *Ukrainians in Canada: The Formative Years, 1891-1924*. Edmonton: Canadian Institute of Ukrainian Studies Press.
- Palmer, Howard. 1975. *Immigration and the Rise of Multiculturalism*. Vancouver: Copp Clark.
- . 1990. *The Search for a New Homeland: Polish and German-Speaking Canadians*. Edmonton: Reidmore Books.
- . 1991. *Ethnicity and Politics in Canada Since Confederation*. Ottawa: Canadian Historical Association.
- Palmer, Howard and Tamara Palmer. 1985. "The Black Experience in Alberta," In: *Peoples of Alberta: Portraits of Cultural Diversity*. Edited by Howard and Tamara Palmer, 365-93. Saskatoon: Western Producer Prairie Books, 1985.
- Pannekoek, Frits. 2001. "Visual History Review: Syncrude Gallery of Aboriginal

- Culture,” Provincial Museum of Alberta. Principal Curators Jack Brink and Susan Berry. Permanent Gallery. November 1997 to present. *Canadian Historical Review* Vol. 82, No. 2: 348-349.
- Potrebenko, Helen. 1977. *No Streets of Gold: A Social History of Ukrainians in Alberta*. Vancouver: New Star Books.
- Prokop, Manfred. 2007. *A History of Alberta's German-Speaking Communities*. Okotoks: M. Prokop.
- Reineberg Holt, Faye. 1999. *Homemade Fun: Games & Pastimes of the Early Prairies*. Calgary, AB: Fifth House.
- . 2000. *Sharing the Good Times: A History of Prairie Women's Joys and Pleasures*. Calgary: Detselig Enterprises.
- Rosenzweig, Uriel. 2000. *The First Century of Jewish life in Edmonton and Northern Alberta, 1893-1993: The First and Second Generations*. Edmonton: Jewish Archives and Historical Society of Edmonton and Northern Alberta.
- Scandinavian Trade and Cultural Society. 2007. *Scandinavian Connections: A Guide to Sites in Alberta*. Edmonton, Alberta: Scandinavian Trade and Cultural Society.
- Skwarok, J. 1959. *The Ukrainian Settlers in Canada and Their Schools, 1891–1921*. Toronto: Basilian Press.
- Stocco, Denise. 1973. *French-Canadian Colonization in Alberta*. Edmonton: Provincial Museum and Archives of Alberta.
- Townshend, Nancy. 2005. *A History of Art in Alberta, 1905-1970*. Calgary: Bayeux Arts Inc.
- Troper, Harold M. 1972. “The Creek Negroes of Oklahoma and Canadian Immigration, 1909-1911,” *Canadian Historical Review*. Vol. 53, No. 3.
- Winks, Robin W. 1971. *The Blacks in Canada: A History*. Montreal: McGill-Queen’s University Press.
- Wonders, William C. 1980. “Scandinavian Settlement in Central Alberta.” In: *The New Provinces: Alberta and Saskatchewan, 1905–1980*, ed. Howard Palmer and Donald Smith, 131–71. Vancouver: Tantalus Research Ltd.
- Wood, Patricia K. 2003. *Nationalism from the Margins: Italians in Alberta and British Columbia*. Montreal: McGill- Queen's University Press.
- Woodcock, George and I. Avakumovic. 1968. *The Doukhobours*. Toronto: Oxford

University Press.

Wright, J.F.C. 1940. *Slava Bohu*. New York: Farrar and Rinehart.

Yedlin, T., ed. 1984. *Germans from Russia in Alberta: Reminiscences*. n.p.: Central and East European Studies Society of Alberta.

York, G. 2001. "Ukraine Fractured Along Ancient Fault Lines," *Globe and Mail* (June 22), A3.

Young, Charles H. 1931. *The Ukrainian Canadians*. Toronto: Thomas Nelson.

Zubek, John P. and Patricia Anne Solberg. 1952. *The Doukhobours at War*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.

Primitive Art

McKendry, Blake. 1983. *Folk Art: Primitive and Naïve Art in Canada*. Toronto: Methuen.

Mills, Antonia Curtze. 1981. *The Beaver Indian Prophet Dance and Related Movements Among North American Indians*. Microfiche. Ann Arbor, Mich.: University Microfilms International.

Walde, Dale and David Meyer, 2003, Pre-Contact Pottery in Alberta: An Overview. In: *Archaeology in Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, Edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dorman. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta. 132-152.

Folk Art

Duncan, Kate. 1982. *Bead Embroidery, the Art of the Northern Athapaskans*. Seattle: University of Washington Press.

———. 1989. *Northern Athapaskan Art: A Beadwork Tradition*. Vancouver: Douglas & McIntyre.

Fleming, John A. 2004. *Folk Furniture of Canada's Doukhobors, Hutterites, Mennonites and Ukrainians*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press.

Guillet, Edwin C. 1968. *Pioneer Arts and Crafts*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Kobayashi, Terry. 1985. *A Compendium of Canadian Folk Artists*. Erin, ON: Boston Mills Press.

McKendry, Blake. 1983. *Folk Art: Primitive and Naïve Art in Canada*. Toronto: Methuen.

———. 1999. *An Illustrated Companion to Canadian Folk Art*. Kingston, ON: B. McKendry.

Music and Verse

Abel, Kerry. 1993. *Drum Songs: Glimpses of Dene History*. Montreal: McGill-Queen's University Press.

Andra-Warner, Elle. 2004. *Robert Service: A Great Canadian Poet's Romance With the North*. Canmore, Alta: Altitude Pub. Canada.

Archer, Violet. 1966. *Life In a Prairie Shack: An Alberta Folk Song*. Alberta Historical Review.

Asch, Michael. 1988. *Kinship and the Drum Dance in a Northern Dene Community*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.

———. 2003. *An Anthology of North American Indian and Eskimo Music* [sound recording]. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Folkways Recordings.

Barz, Gregory. 2008. "The Challenges of Human Relations in Ethnographic Inquiry: Examples from Arctic and Subarctic Fieldwork," In: *Shadows in the Field: New Perspectives for Fieldwork in Ethnomusicology*. 2nd Edition. Edited by Gregory F. Barz and Timothy J. Cooley. New York: Oxford University Press.

Browne, Nancy and Lynn Whidden. 1992. *Songs of the Northern Plains: Traditional and Contemporary Aboriginal Songs*. Regina: Weigl.

Chipman, Warwick Fielding. *The Amber Valley [microform]: Poems*. Toronto: S.B. Gundy.

Cosier, Tony. 1989. *Songs from the North: Inspirational Poems by 30 Canadian Poets*. [Cambridge Springs, PA : High Street Community Church].

Cronyn, George W. 1934. *The Path on the Rainbow: An Anthology of Songs and Chants from the Indians of North America*. New York, Liveright Pub. Corp.

Densmore, Frances. 1910. "Chippewa Music, I." *Bureau of American Ethnology Bulletin* 45. Washington D.C.

Diamond, Beverley and Robert Witmer. 1994. *Canadian Music: Issues of Hegemony and Identity*. Toronto: Canadian Scholars' Press.

- Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan. 194-. *The Athabasca Trail*. Alberta Folklore and Local History Collection.
- Eckert, Penelope and Russell Newmark. 1980. "Central Eskimo Song Duels: A Contextual Analysis of Ritual Ambiguity," *Ethnology*, 19: 191-212.
- Fletcher, Alice C. 1994. *Indian Games and Dances with Native Songs: Arranged from American Indian Ceremonials and Sports*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.
- Fowke, Edith and Alan Mills. 1960. *Canada's Story in Song*. Toronto: W. J. Gage Ltd.
- Guest, Wilfred. 1978. *Poetic Fancies*. Grande Prairie, Alberta: W. Guest.
- Hemsworth, Wade. 2003. *Folk Songs of the Canadian North Woods* [sound recording]. Washington, D.C.: Smithsonian Folkways Recordings.
- Horan, J.W. 1942. *Songs of the North: Stories in Verse, of Life Down Under the Midnight Sun of North Western Canada*. Edmonton: Sterling Printers.
- Houston, James. 1975. *Songs of the Dream People: Chants and Images from the Indians and Eskimos of North America*. Don Mills, ON: Longman.
- Klymasz, Robert B. Klymasz, Robert B. 1989. *The Ukrainian Folk Ballad in Canada*. New York, NY: AMS Press.
- . 1992. *Svi'eto: Celebrating Ukrainian-Canadian Ritual in East Central Alberta Through the Generations*. Edmonton: Historic Sites and Archives Service.
- . 2000. "The Cantorial Tradition in Canada: A Bibliography," In: *From Chantre to Djak: Cantorial Traditions in Canada*. Hull, PQ: Canadian Museum of Civilization.
- Kurath, Gertrude. 1966. "Dogrib Choreography and Music," In: *The Dogrib Hand Game*. Edited by June Helm and Nancy Oestreich Lurie. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, Bulletin 205: 12-28.
- Lehr, John. 1982. "Stephan G Stephansson: The Poet of the Rocky Mountains, No. 9.
- Lieurance, Thurlow. 1920. *Songs of the North American Indian: With Preface and Explanatory Notes*. Philadelphia: Theodore Presser.
- Lillos, Brian Martin. 1977. *Selective Studies in Musical Analysis of Beaver Indian*

- Dreamer Songs: A Structuralistic Approach in Ethnomusicology*. Microfiche. Ottawa. National Library of Canada. Thesis (M.Mus.) Vancouver: University of British Columbia.
- Lyon, George. 1999. *Community Music in Alberta: Some Good Schoolhouse Stuff!* Calgary: UC Press.
- MacDonell, Margaret. 1982. *The Emigrant Experience: Songs of Highland Emigrants in North America*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Mallory, Enid. 2006. *Robert Service: Under the Spell of the Yukon*. 1st Edition. Victoria, BC: Heritage House.
- McCracken, Jane W. 1982. *Stephan G. Stephansson: The Poet of the Rocky Mountains*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources Division.
- Mills, Alan. 2001. *Canada's Story in Song* [sound recording]. Washington, D.C. : Smithsonian Folkways Recordings.
- Mitham, Peter James. 1994. *Dementia Borealis: The Canadian North in the Verse of Robert Service*. Thesis (M.A.)--University of Alberta.
- Moir, James M. 1978. *Family Chronicle: Poems and Photographs of the Canadian West*. Toronto: Gage Pub.
- Murray, Jean A. 1999. *Music of the Alaska-Klondike Gold Rush: Songs & History*. Fairbanks, Alaska: University of Alaska Press.
- [N.A.] 2008. *Métis Roots [sound recording]: Music of the Métis*. Winnipeg: Sunshine.
- Pigeon Lake Singers. 1977. *Cree Tribal Songs* [sound recording]. Phoenix, Arizona: Canyon.
- Ridington, Robin and Jillian Ridington. 2006. *When You Sing it Now, Just Like New: First Nations Poetics, Voices, and Representations*. Lincoln : University of Nebraska Press.
- Sargent, Margaret. 1952. *Folk and Primitive Music in Canada*. Ottawa: National Museum of Canada, Bulletin 123, 1951, pp. 75-79. Also Journal of the International Folk Music Council 4: 65-68.
- Service, Robert W. 1913. *Ballads of a Cheechako*. Toronto: William Briggs.
- 1917. *Selected Poems [microform]: With Some Account of His Life and Experiences*. London: T. Unwin,

- . 1945. *Ploughman to the Moon*. New York: Dodd, Mead and Co.
- . 1953. "Athabasca Dick," *The Best of Robert Service*. Toronto: The Ryerson Press, 70-73.
- . 195? *My Adventures in the North*. Anchorage, Alaska: Bard of Alaska.
- . 1958. *Songs of the High North*. London, E. Benn.
- . 1968. *Rhymes of a Rolling Stone*. Toronto: Ryerson Press.
- Smith, Mary Doherty. 1949. *Songs of the Athabasca*. Regina, Sask.
- Sweeney, John. 1960. *Rhymes and Verse by the Bard of Peace River: John Sweeney*. Compiled by the Fairview Rotary Club. Published by "The Post".
- Whidden, Lynn. 2007. *Essential Song [electronic resource]: Three Decades of Northern Cree Music*. Waterloo, Ont: Wilfrid Laurier University Press.
- Whyte, Jon. 1981. *Homage, Henry Kelsey: A Poem in Five Parts*. Winnipeg: Turnstone Press.
- Wilburn, Gene. 1995. *Northern Journey: A Guide to Canadian Folk Music*. Teeswater, ON: Reference Press.
- Witmer, Robert. 1990. *Ethnomusicology in Canada: Proceedings of the First Conference on Ethnomusicology in Canada*. Toronto: Institute for Canadian Music.
- Wuttunee, William I. C. 1962. "Thirst Dance of the Crees," *The Beaver*. Vol. 42, No. 3: 20-23.

Literature and Narrative

- Basso, Ellen B. 1978. "The Enemy of Every Tribe: "Bushman" Images in Northern Athpaskan Narratives," *American Ethnologist*. 5: 690-709.
- Freuchen, Peter. 1956. *The Legend of Daniel Williams*. New York: Julian Messner.
- Frood, Earle. 1995. *The Wabasca Adventure*. Prince George: Caitlin Press.
- Hodgson, Maurice. 1967. "The Exploration Journal as Literature," *The Beaver*. Vol. 47, No. 3: 4-12.
- Hubbard, William Keith. 1969. *The Klondike Gold Rush in Literature, 1896-1930*.

- London, Canada.
- Li, Fanggui and Ronald Scollon. 1976. *Chipewyan Texts*. Institute of history and philology. Academia Sinica. Special publications. Taipei: Nankang.
- Norman, Howard A. 1990. *Northern Tales: Traditional Stories of Eskimo and Indian Peoples*. New York: Pantheon Books.
- Steele, Harwood Elmes Robert. 1923. *Spirit-of-Iron (Manitou-Pewabic) An Authentic Novel of the North-West Mounted Police*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Thornton, Mildred Valley. 1966. *Indian Lives and Legends*. Vancouver: Mitchell Press.
- Warkentin, Germaine. Ed. 2006. *Canadian Exploration Literature*. 2nd Toronto: Dundurn Press.
- Painting and Printmaking**
- Ainslie, Patricia and Mary-Beth Laviolette. 2008. *Alberta Arts and Artists: An Overview*. Calgary: Fifth House Publishers.
- Ayre, John. 1999. "The Art That Came In from the Cold: James Houston and the Advent of Inuit Printmaking," *The Beaver*. Vol. 79, No.1: 8-15.
- Bell, Michael. 1973. *Painters in a New Land: From Annapolis Royal to the Klondike*. Toronto. McClelland and Stewart.
- Cochran, Bente Roed. 1989. *Printmaking in Alberta 1945-1985*. Edmonton: The University of Alberta Press.
- Danylchuck, Jack. n.d. "High-Art romance on the Hinton Trail: A 12-year old Love Affair," *The Edmonton Journal*.
- Gibson, Nancy. 1990/1991 (De/Jan). "The Artist as Historian: The Life and Work of C.W. Jeffereys, Illustrator of Canada's History," *The Beaver*. Vol. 70, No. 6: 6-16.
- Godsell, Patricia. 1976. *Enjoying Canadian Painting*. Don Mills, Ont.: General Pub. Co.
- Harper, J. Russell. 1970. *Early Painters and Engravers in Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1974. *A People's Art: primitive, Naïve, Provincial, and Folk Painting in Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

- . 1977. *Painting in Canada: A History*. 2nd Edition. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1985. "Paul Kane." In: *The Canadian Encyclopedia*. Edited by James H. Marsh. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- Haycock, Maurice. 2007. *On site with Maurice Haycock, Artist of the Arctic: Paintings and Drawings of Historical Sites in the Canadian Arctic*. Campbellville, ON: E. Kent Publishers.
- Jackson, Christopher. 1986? *An Alien Land: Arctic Prints of the 19th Century*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- . 1991. *North by West: The Arctic and Rocky Mountain Paintings of Lawren Harris 1924-1931*. Calgary: The Museum.
- Kane, Paul. 1971. *Paul Kane's Frontier, Including Wanderings of an Artist Among the Indians of North America*. Ottawa: National Gallery of Canada.
- Kostash, Myrna. 1996. "Taking a Stand in Timber Country," *Canadian Geographic* (Sept/Oct).
- Lavolette, Mary-Beth. 2005. *An Alberta Art Chronicle: Adventures in Recent & Contemporary Art*. Canmore, Alta.: Altitude Pub. Canada.
- Reid, Dennis. 1982. *Alberta Rhythm: The Later Work of A.Y. Jackson*. Toronto: Art Gallery of Ontario.
- Richards, Sys Birgit, 1994. *The Art of Nineteenth-Century Explorer-Artists in the Arctic Regions of North America: With a Catalogue Raisonne of their Sketches, Paintings, and Prints in the Collections of the Arctic Institute of North America and the Glenbow Museum, Calgary, Alberta*. M.A., University of Calgary.
- Shostak, Peter. 1991. *For Our Children: A Series of Paintings Depicting Early Ukrainian Pioneer Settlement in Western Canada*. Victoria, B.C.: Yalenka Enterprises.
- Townshend, Nancy. 2005. *A History of Art in Alberta, 1905-1970*. Calgary: Bayeux Arts Inc.
- Wilkin, Karen. 1980. *Painting in Alberta: An Historical Survey*. Edmonton Art Gallery.

Photography

- Berton, Pierre. 2005. [1997] *The Klondike Quest: A Photographic Essay, 1897-1899*. Erin, ON: Boston Mills Press.
- Bigsby, J.J. 1850. *The Shoe and Canoe or Pictures of Travel in the Canadas*. Vol. 1. London: Chapman and Hall.
- Brooks, Bill. 1978. *The Colour of Alberta*. Willowdale, ON: Hounslow Press.
- Canada. Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. 1967. *Early Canada: a Collection of Historical Photographs by Officers of the Geological Survey of Canada*. Ottawa.
- Cashman, Tony. 1979. *A Picture History of Alberta*. Edmonton: Hurtig.
- Cohen, Stan. 1977. *The Streets Were Paved with Gold: A Pictorial History of the Klondike Gold Rush 1896-1899*. Missoula, Mont.: Pictorial Histories.
- Godsell, Philip H. 1952. "Warriors of the Plains," *The Beaver* Vol. 32, No. 1: 3-7. Photos.
- Grant, Robert S. 1991. "Wings Over the North," *The Beaver*. Vol. 71, No. 5: 7-14.
- Hendy, Eileen & Weber, D. (eds.). 2000. *Athabasca Album: A Pictorial History 1875-1999*. Alberta: Quebecore Jasper Printing.
- Hunter, George. 1953 (Sept). "Flight Northwards: Scenes from an Air Journey," *The Beaver*. Vol. 33, No. 2: 10-21.
- . 1955. "Athabasca Tar Sands," *The Beaver*. Vol. 34, No. 4: 14-19.
- Johnston, Thomas. 1976. *Eskimo Music by Region: A Comparative Circumpolar Study*. Ottawa: National Museum of Man Mercury Series.
- Mattison, David. 1997. "Photo Nuggets: Klondike Photographers," *The Beaver*. Vol. 77, No. 5: 33-39.
- McAllister, Bruce. 2002. *Wings Above the Arctic: A Photographic History of Arctic Aviation*. Boulder, Colo.: Roundup Press.
- Moir, James M. 1978. *Family Chronicle: Poems and Photographs of the Canadian West*. Toronto: Gage Pub.

- Reineberg Holt, Faye. 2004. *Prairie Twins: Alberta and Saskatchewan Photographic Memories, 1905-2005*. Calgary: Detselig Enterprise.
- . 2009. *Alberta: A History in Photographs*. 1st Heritage House ed. Victoria, B.C.: Heritage House Pub. Co.
- Van Horn, Tim. 2005. *I am Albertan: A Modern-day Photographic Essay of the Albertan People*. Red Deer, AB: This Country Canada.
- Waiser, W. A. 1993. *The New Northwest: The Photographs of the Frank Crean Expeditions, 1908-1909*. Saskatoon: Fifth House.
- Walz, Jay and Audrey with Photographs by John de Visser. 1970. *Portrait of Canada*. Toronto: McGraw-Hill.
- Wilson, Graham. 1997. *The Klondike Gold Rush: Photographs From 1896-1899*. Whitehorse, Yukon: Wolf Creek Books.

Theatre and Performance Art

- Appleford, Robert. ed. 2005. *Aboriginal Drama and Theatre*. Toronto: Playwrights Canada Press.
- Ball, John. 1993. *Bibliography of Theatre History in Canada: The Beginnings Through 1984*. Toronto: ECW Press.
- Booth, Michael R. 1960 "Pioneer Entertainment: Theatrical Taste in the Early Canadian West," *Canadian Literature* No. 4: 52-58.
- . 1962. "Gold Rush Theatres of the Klondike," *The Beaver*, Vol. 41, No.4, 32-37.
- Dunbar, Moira. 1958. "The Royal Arctic Theatre," *Canadian Art*. 15: 110-?
- Filewod, Alan D. ed. 2009. *Theatre Histories*. Toronto: Playwrights Canada Press.
- Fletcher, Alice C. 1994. *Indian Games and Dances with Native Songs: Arranged from American Indian Ceremonials and Sports*. Lincoln: University of Nebraska Press.
- Foon, Dennis. 1978. *Raft Baby: A Play*. Vancouver: Talon Books.
- Goddard, Pliny E. 1919. "Notes on the Sun Dance of the Cree in Alberta," *Anthropological Papers of the American Museum of Natural History* 16: 295-310.

- Honigmann, John J. 1968 (Autumn). "Dance of the Ancient Ones," *The Beaver* 44-47.
- Howard, James H. 1960. "The Northern Plains Grass Dance costume," *American Indian Hobbyist* Vol. 7, No. 1.
- Knowles, Richard. *"Ethnic," Multicultural and Intercultural Theatre*. Toronto: Playwrights Canada Press.
- McKinnie, Michael. ed. 2009. *Space and the Geographies of Theatre*. Toronto: Playwrights Canada Press.
- Nothof, Anne. ed. 2008. *Theatre in Alberta*. 1st ed. Toronto: Playwrights Canada Press.
- Orrel, John. 1965. "Theatre Activities in Alberta," *Culture* 26: 191-194.
- Reineberg Holt, Faye. 1992. *Alberta Plays and Playwrights: Alberta Playwrights' Network Catalogue*. Edmonton, AB: Jasper Printing Group.
- Scollon, Ronald. 1979. *The Context of the Informant Narrative Performance: From Sociolinguistics to Ethnolinguistics at Fort Chipewyan, Alberta*. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- Skinner, Alanson Buck. 1919. "The Sun Dance of the Plains-Ojibway," *Anthropological Papers of the American Museum of Natural History*. 16, 311-315.
- . 1919. "The Sun Dance of the Plains-Cree," *Anthropological Papers of the American Museum of Natural History* 16: 283-93.
- Stuart, E. Ross. 1984. *The History of Prairie Theatre: The Development of Theatre in Alberta, Manitoba and Saskatchewan 1833-1982*. Toronto: Simon & Pierre.
- Wagner, Anton. 2006. *A Preliminary Bibliography and Database of Canadian Theatre Reviews 1900-1992*. Fredericton, N.B.: University of New Brunswick.
- Wuttunee, William I. C. 1962. "Thirst Dance of the Crees," *The Beaver*. Vol. 42, No. 3: 20-23.

Material Culture and Special Topics

- Bell, Michael. 1995. *The Other Alberta Sculpture*. Ottawa: Carleton University Art Gallery.
- Carter, William Harry. 1973. *Metallic ornaments of the North American Indians 1400-1900*. London, Ont: Namind Printers and Publishers.
- Cole, Douglas. 1995. *Captured Heritage: The Scramble for Northwest Artifacts*. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.
- Dean, John. 1982. *Quillwork of the Plains*. Calgary: Glenbow-Alberta Institute.
- Javorski, Mary. 1983. *The Canadian West Discovered: An Exhibition of Printed Maps from the 16th to Early 20th Centuries*. Calgary: Glenbow Museum.
- Laubin, Reginald. 1957. *The Indian Tipi: Its History, Construction and Use*. New York: Ballantyne.
- Millar, Nancy. 2006. *The Unmentionable History of the West*. Red Deer, AB: Red Deer Press.
- Reineberg Holt, Faye. 1999. *Monarchs of the Fields: the Story of the Combine Harvester*. Calgary: Fifth House.
- Vanstone, James W. 1991. "The Isaac Cowie Collection of Plains Cree Material Culture from Central Alberta." *Fieldiana: Anthropology*, New Series No. 17: 1–56.
- Walde, Dale and David Meyer, 2003. "Pre-Contact Pottery in Alberta: An Overview," In: *Archaeology in Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, Edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta. 132-152.
- Wilson, Kathryn, J. 1980. *Feminine Fur Trade Fashions: 1800-1840*. Chadron, Neb.: The Fur Press.

Agriculture, Industry and Resource Development

General Studies

- Alberta. Alberta Economic Development. 1982. *Alberta Industry & Resources*. Edmonton: Alberta Economic Development.
- Alberta. Dept. of Industry and Development. 1959-1970. *Alberta Industry and Resources*. Edmonton: Alberta Bureau of Statistics, Dept. of Industry and Development.
- Barlow, Maude. 2007. *Blue Covenant: The Global Water Crisis and the Coming Battle for the Right to Water*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart Ltd.
- Barlow, Maude and Tony Clark. 2002. *Blue Gold: The Fight to Stop the Corporate Theft of the World's Water*. New York: New Press.
- Canada, Department of the Interior. 1898. "Dominion Lands Survey," *Sessional Papers*, Vol. XXXII, #10: 5, 66-68.
- . 1895. *Geological Survey of Canada: Report on Progress, 1894*. Ottawa: Depart. of the Interior.
- . 1896. *Geological Survey of Canada: Report on Progress, 1895*. Ottawa: Depart. of the Interior.
- Chambers, Ernest J. 1908. *Canada's Fertile Northland: A Glimpse of the Enormous Resources of Part of the Unexplored Regions of the Dominion*. Ottawa: Government Printing Bureau.
- . 1914. *The Unexploited West: A Compilation of the Authentic Information Available at the Present Time as to the Natural Resources of the Unexploited Regions of Northern Canada*. Ottawa: King's Printer/ [Printed by J. de L. Tach].
- . 1916. *The Athabaska River Country: A Compilation of All Authentic Information Available as to the Resources and Possibilities of the Athabaska River Basin*. Ottawa: prepared in the Railway Lands Branch, Department of the Interior.
- Flanagan, Tom. 2009. *Resource Industries and Security Issues in Northern Alberta*. Calgary: Canadian Defence & Foreign Affairs Institute.
- Foster, Harold D. 1981. *Water: the Emerging Crisis in Canada*. Toronto: J. Lorimer in association with the Canadian Institute for Economic Policy.
- Hodge, R. Anthony. 2007. *Freedom to Choose: Natural Resource Revenues and the*

- Future of Northern communities*. Toronto, Ont.: Walter and Duncan Gordon Foundation.
- McRory, Robert E. 1982. *Energy Heritage*. Alberta Energy and Natural Resources, Edmonton.
- Piper, Liza. 2008. *The Industrial Transformation of Subarctic Canada*. Vancouver: UBC Press.
- Pratt, Larry. 1976. *The State and Province-Building: Alberta's Development Strategy, 1971-1976*. Edmonton: Dept. of Political Science, University of Alberta.
- Rea, J.K. 1968. *The Political Economy of the Canadian North. An Interpretation of the Course of Development in the Northern Territories of Canada to the Early 1960's*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Richards, John. 1979. *Prairie Capitalism: Power and Influence in the New West*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Zaslow, Morris, Coates Kenneth Coates, and William R. Morrison. 1989. *For Purposes of Dominion: Essays in Honour of Morris Zaslow*. North York, Ont.: Captus Press.

Agriculture

- Association of Alberta Agricultural Fieldmen. 1987. *Fieldmen: The First Forty Years*. Edmonton?: Association of Agricultural Fieldmen; Agricultural Service Boards.
- Armstrong. 1995. Drinking Water and Agriculture; Synthesis Report #7, Northern River Basins Study.
- Bicha, Karel Denis. 1968. *The American Farmer and the Canadian West, 1896-1914*. Lawrence, Kansas: Coronado Press.
- Bowen, Dawn. 2002. "Agricultural Settlement in Northern Alberta," *Geographical Review* 92: 503–25.
- Canada. Dept. of Agriculture. 1887. *North West of Canada: A General Sketch of the Extent, Woods and Forests, Mineral Resources and Climatology of the Four Provisional Districts of Assiniboia, Saskatchewan, Alberta and Athabasca*. Ottawa, Dept. of Agriculture.
- Campbell, Clyde and Myrle. 1988. *Challenge of the Homestead*. Calgary: Historical Society of Alberta.

- Carlson, Gary C. 1981. *Farm Voices: A Brief History and Reference Guide of Prairie Farm Organizations and Their Leaders, 1870 to 1980*. Regina: Saskatchewan Federation of Agriculture.
- Carter, Sarah. 1993. *Lost Harvests: Prairie Indian Reserve Farmers and Government Policy*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- Cunfer, Geoff. 2005. *On the Great Plains: Agriculture and Environment*. 1st ed. College Station: Texas A&M University Press.
- Epp, Roger. 2007. "The Agrarian Movement in Alberta," In: *The Prairie Agrarian Movement Revisited: Centenary Symposium on the Foundation of the Territorial Grain Growers Association*. Edited by Murray Knuttila and Bob Stirling. Regina: University of Regina, Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Farm Credit Corporation. 1979. *The Development of Farm Credit in Canada*. Ottawa: Farm Credit Corp.
- Foran, Max. 2003. "'Grassroots' History: Agricultural Land Use in Alberta." *Alberta History*. Vol. 54, Issue 1.
- . 2003. *Trails and Trials: Markets and Land Use in the Alberta Beef Cattle Industry, 1881-1948*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Hall, R.I., P.R. Leavitt, R. Quinlan, A.S. Dixit, and J.P. Smol. 1999. "Effects of agriculture, urbanization and climate on water quality in the northern Great Plains." *Limnol. Oceanography*, 44: 739-756.
- MacDonald, Kathleen. 1983. Potential for Agricultural Expansion in Northern Alberta Alberta Agriculture. Edmonton: Resource Economics Branch, Economic Services Division, Alberta Agriculture.
- MacEwan, John Walter Grant. 1950. *Agriculture on Parade: The Story of the Fairs*. Toronto: Thomas Nelson.
- . 2000. *The Sodbusters*. Second edition. Toronto: Thomas Nelson & Sons, 1948. Calgary: Fifth House.
- Martin, Chester. 1920. *The Natural Resources Question: The Historical Basis of Provincial Claims*. Winnipeg: King's Printer.
- McLeod, Evelyn Slater. 1977. "Our Sod House," *The Beaver*. Vol. 57, No. 2: 12-15.
- Moodie, D.W. and B. Kaye. 1969. "The Northern Limit of Indian Agriculture in North America." *Geographical Review* 59: 513-529.

- Moorhouse, Hopkins. 1918. *Deep Furrows, which Tells of Pioneer Trails Along Which the Farmers of Western Canada Fought Their Way to Great Achievements in Co-operation*. Toronto: McLeod.
- Pitmen, Ted. ed. 1979. *The Homestead, as Told by Bill Pearson*. Athabasca: Pitmann.
- Preble, Edward Alexander. 1908. "A Biological Investigation of the Athabaska-Mackenzie Region." *United States Department of Agriculture, North American Fauna*, No. 27.
- Priestley, Norman F. 1967. *Furrows, Faith and Fellowship*. Edmonton, Alberta Agricultural Centennial Committee.
- Roe, Frank Gilbert. 1952. "Early Agriculture in Western Canada in Relation to Climatic Stability," *Agricultural History*, Vol. 26, No. 3: 104-123
- Spector, David. 1977. "A Bibliographic Study of Field Agriculture in the Canadian Prairie West, 1870-1940," No. 46.
- . 1978. "An Annotated Bibliography for the Study of Animal Husbandry in the Canadian Prairie West 1880-1925, Part A," No. 77. (Sources available in Western Canada and United States).
- . 1978. "An Annotated Bibliography for the Study of Animal Husbandry in the Canadian Prairie West 1880-1925, Part B," No. 78. (Sources Available in Ottawa).
- Strange, H. G. L. 1954. *A Short History of Prairie Agriculture*. Winnipeg, MB: Searle Grain Co.
- Usher, Peter J. 1985. *An Evaluation of Native Harvest Survey Methodologies in Northern Canada*. Ottawa: Environmental Studies Revolving Funds
- Wall, E., B. Smit and J. Wandel, eds. 2007. *Farming in a Changing Climate: Agricultural Adaptation in Canada*. Vancouver: UBC Press.
- Wood, J. David. 2006. "'The Last Frontier': Rationalizing the Spread of Farming into the Boreal Woods of Canada, c. 1910-1940," *The Canadian Geographer* 50: 38-55.
- . 2007. *Places of Last Resort: The Expansion of the Farm Frontier into the Boreal Forest in Canada, c. 1910-1940*. McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Wood, Louis Aubrey. 1975. *A History of the Farmer's Movements in Canada*. Toronto and Buffalo: University of Toronto Press.

Forestry

- Abel, G. 1954. "Report on a Reconnaissance of the Timberland Reserve Held by North Western Pulp and Power Limited, in the Vicinity of Edson Alberta." June 1954.
- Alberta. 1949. "An Act Relating to the Administration of Forests and Certain Public Lands, *The Forests Act*," Chapter 43, Statutes of Alberta 1949.
- Alberta. 1954. "Agreement with North Western Pulp & Power Ltd., O.C. 125054," *The Alberta Gazette*, 15 Nov. 1954.
- Alberta. Forest Service. 1977. *Perspectives II: The Forest Industry in Alberta: Contributions*. Edmonton: Environment Conservation Authority.
- Alberta. Alberta Forestry, Lands and Wildlife. 1992. *Directory of Secondary Wood-Using Industries in Alberta*. Edmonton: Canadian Forestry Service, Northern Forestry Centre; Alberta Dept. of Forestry, Lands & Wildlife.
- Alberta. Alberta Human Resources and Employment. 2006. *Industry profiles. Forestry and Logging with Support Activities*. Edmonton: Alberta Human Resources and Employment.
- Alberta. Historical Resources Division. 1978. *The Effects of Forestry Operations on the Historical Resource Base of Alberta*. Edmonton: Archaeological Survey of Alberta; Alberta Culture, Historical Resources Division.
- Amelia Spanach interviewed by Peter J. Murphy and Robert E. Stevenson at Edmonton, 25 January 1999, for the Weldwood History Project. Hinton: West Fraser Archives.
- Anonymous. 1957. "The Hinton Trail: The Story of North Western Pulp and Power Ltd." *Pulp and Paper Magazine of Canada* 58: 125-188.
- Bleffen, T.F. 1931. "Annual Report of the Director of Forestry." Edmonton: Alberta Department of Lands and Mines.
- Bott, Robert. 1998. *Living Legacy: Sustainable Forest Management at Hinton, Alberta*. Hinton: Weldwood of Canada.
- Bott, Robert, Peter Murphy, and Robert Udell with Robert Stevenson (photo research). 2003. *Learning from the Forest: A Fifty-Year Journey in Sustainable Forest Management*. Calgary, Alta.: Fifth House Publishers.
- Campbell, R.H. 1909. Report of the Superintendent of Forestry. In: "Annual Report of the Department of the Interior for the fiscal year ending 31 March 1908." Sessional paper 25A. Ottawa.

- Canada. Dept. of Agriculture. 1887. *North West of Canada: A General Sketch of the Extent, Woods and Forests, Mineral Resources and Climatology of the Four Provisional Districts of Assiniboia, Saskatchewan, Alberta and Athabasca*. Ottawa, Dept. of Agriculture.
- Canadian Council of Forest Ministers. 1998. "National Forest Strategy 1998-2003: Sustainable forest, a Canadian commitment." Ottawa.
- Curwood, James Oliver. 1923. *The Flaming Forest: A Novel of the Canadian Northwest*. Toronto: Copp Clark Co.
- DeSorcy, Gerry. 1990. *The Proposed Alberta-Pacific Pulp Mill: Report of the EIA Review Board*. Edmonton: Alberta Environment.
- Doucet, J.A. 1914. "Timber Conditions in the Little Smoky River Valley, Alberta and Adjacent territory." *Forestry Branch Bulletin* 41, Department of the Interior, Ottawa.
- Forest Products Association of Canada. 2003. "Growing up: The History of Pulp and Paper in Canada." Website: <http://www.cppa.org/english/info/grow.htm>.
- Health and Welfare Canada. 1991. *Pulp and Paper Mill Effluent: Issues*. Health Protection Branch. Ottawa, ON.
- Holmberg, Robert. 1992. *Pulp Mills and the Environment: An Annotated Bibliography for Northern Alberta*. Athabasca, AB.: Athabasca University. PDF: <http://auspace.athabascau.ca:8080/dspace/bitstream/2149/1322/1/PulpMills.pdf>
- Huestis, Eric S. 1948. "Annual Report of the Director of Forestry, 1947-1948." Edmonton, Alberta: Department of Lands and Mines.
- . 1986. *Early Days in Alberta Forestry*. Edited by Peter J. Murphy. Edmonton: University of Alberta, Faculty of Agriculture and Forestry.
- Huth, Robin. 2002. *Guardians of the Forests: History of the Alberta Forest Service: The First Hundred Years*. Silverton, BC: Wombat Press.
- Karaim, B. W. 1975. *Alberta's Fence Post Industry, 1970-74*. Edmonton: Alberta Energy and Natural Resources, Forest Service.
- Knechtel, A. 1910. "The Dominion Forest Reserves." *Canadian Forestry Journal* V(1): 31-47.
- Letter from Dorris Gosney (daughter of forest ranger A. Crawford) to Peter J. Murphy dated 26 October 2000. P. Murphy files.

- Loomis, R.D. 1957. "Alberta's Forest Resources and Forest Management," *Pulp and Paper Magazine of Canada*.
- . 1990. "Natural Management of the Forest: The pursuit of Nature's way." Interviews with R.D. Loomis y P.J. Murphy 1987-1989. Edmonton: University of Alberta Archives.
- Morgan, J.H. 1884. "Preliminary Report on the Subject of the Protection of the Forests of the Dominion and the Planting of Forest Trees Upon an Extensive Scale," In: *Annual report of the Department of the Interior for 1884*. Sessional Papers 13A 1885, Ottawa.
- Murphy, P.J. 1985. *History of Forest and Prairie Fire Control Policy in Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Energy and Natural Resources.
- . 2001. "Wildfire in Alberta," Edmonton: Natural Disturbance and Forest Management Symposium, 5 March 2001.
- . 2006. *The Alberta Forest Service 1930-2005: Protection and Management of Alberta's Forests*. Edmonton: Alberta Sustainable Resource Development.
- . 2007. *A Hard Road to Travel: Land, Forests and People in the Upper Athabasca Region*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Bruce Peel Special Collections.
- Alberta. Forest Service. 1977. *Perspectives II: The Forest Industry in Alberta: Contributions*. Edmonton: Environment Conservation Authority.
- Pratt, Larry. 1994. *The Last Great Forest: Japanese Multinationals and Alberta's Northern Forests*. Edmonton: NeWest Publishers Limited.
- Price, F.A. 1957. "The Inception of the North Western Pulp and Power Limited." *Pulp and Paper Magazine of Canada* (May 1957).
- Pyne, Stephen J. 2008. "Plain and Mountain: Fire Provinces of Western Canada," In: *Awful Splendour: A Fire History of Canada*. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- Ray Ranger interviewed by P.J. Murphy and Robert E. Stevenson at Marshall, Saskatchewan, 20 May 1998 for the Weldwood History Project. Hinton: West Fraser Forestry Archives.
- Richardson, Mary, Joan Sherman, and Michael Gismondi. 1993. *Winning Back the Words: Confronting Experts in an Environmental Public Hearing*. Toronto: Garamond Press.

- Rogean, M.P. 1997. "Landscape Disturbance Project Stand Origin Mapping 1997." Hinton: Prepared for the foothills Model Forest.
- Ross, M. M., and C. Y. Sharvit. 1998. "Forest Management in Alberta and the Right to Hunt, Trap and Fish Under Treaty 8," *Alberta Law Review* 36: 645-91.
- Rowe, J.S. 1972. *Forest Regions of Canada*. Ottawa: Publ. 1300. Canadian Forest Service, Environment Canada.
- Rude, Darlene. 2004. *From the Fur Trade to Free Trade [electronic resource]: Forestry and First Nations Women in Canada*. Ottawa, ON: Status of Women Canada.
- Telfer, E. S. 1977. *Forest Practices and Wildlife on Experimental Watersheds at Hinton, Alberta*. Edmonton: Canadian Wildlife Service.
- Thomas, Richard. 1998. *The Boreal Forest Natural Region of Alberta*. Edmonton: The Dept.
- Van Wagner, C.E. 1978. "Age-class and the fire cycle." *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 8: 220-227.
- Wood, J. David. 2007. *Places of Last Resort: The Expansion of the Farm Frontier into the Boreal Forest in Canada, c. 1910-1940*. McGill-Queen's University Press.

Oil and Oil Sands

- Alberta Oil Sands Environmental Research Program. 1978. *A Socioeconomic Evaluation of the Recreational Use of Fish and Wildlife Resources in Alberta, with particular reference to the AOSERP Study Area*. Edmonton: Alberta Environment.
- Barlow, Maude. 2007. *Blue Covenant: The Global Water Crisis and the Coming Battle for the Right to Water*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart Ltd.
- Barlow, Maude and Tony Clark. 2002. *Blue Gold: The Fight to Stop the Corporate Theft of the World's Water*. New York: New Press.
- Bell, Robert. 1907. *The tar-sands of the Athabasca River, Canada*. Ottawa: American Institute of Mining Engineers.
- Bissett, Don. 1974. *Resource Harvests: Hunters-Trappers in the Mackenzie Valley (economic and social significance)*. [s.l.] Environmental-Social Committee, Northern Pipelines, Task Force on Northern Oil Development; available by mail from Information Canada.

- Blanchet, G. H. 1930. *Preliminary Report on the Aerial Mineral Exploration of Northern Canada*. Ottawa: F. A. Acland.
- . 1970. *Oil Over the Mountains: Canol, The First Oil Pipeline in the Canadian North*. Edited by Don W. Thomson. Ottawa: North.
- Bone, Robert M and Robert J. Mahnic. 1984. "Norman Wells: The Oil Center of the Northwest Territories," *Arctic* 37: 53-60.
- Bowen, Lynn. 1999. "Elusive Treasure: Fortune Seeking in the Athabasca Tar Sands," *The Beaver*. Vol. 79, No. 1: 22-27.
- Bruce, James P. 2006. *Implications of a 2°C Global Temperature Rise on Canada's Water Resources: Athabasca River and oil sands development, Great Lakes and Hydropower production*. Toronto, Ont.: World Wildlife Fund Canada.
- CAPP. 2002. *Use of Water by Alberta's Upstream Oil and Gas Industry*. Technical Report. Calgary: Canadian Association of Petroleum Producers: 52.
- Chastko, Paul A. 2004. *Developing Alberta's Oil Sands: From Karl Clark to Kyoto*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Comfort, D. J. 1973-74. *Meeting Place of Many Waters: A History of Fort McMurray*. Fort McMurray, AB: Comfort Enterprises.
- . 1974. *Ribbon of Water and Steamboats North: A History of Fort McMurray, 1870-1898*.
- . 1975 (Autumn). "William McMurray: The Name Behind the Fort," *Alberta History*.
- . 1975. *Pass the McMurray Salt Please! the Alberta Salt Company as Remembered by three Fort McMurray Pioneers*. Fort McMurray, Alt., Fort McMurray Public Library.
- . 1980. *The Abasand Fiasco: The Rise and Fall of a Brave Pioneer Oil Sands Extraction Plant*. Edmonton: Friesen Printers.
- . *Collection 1972-1982*. Accession no. 84-25. University of Alberta Archives.
- Coutu, Phillip R. 2002. *Inkonze: The Stones of Traditional Knowledge: A Story of the Athabasca Tar Sands*. 2nd Edition. Edmonton: Thunderwoman Ethnographics.
- Dahlgren, Dorothy. 1975. *Tales of the Tarsands*. Fort McMurray, AB: Jean Pub.

- Ells, S. C. 1962. *Recollections of the Development of the Athabasca Oil Sands*. Dept. of Mines and Technical Surveys, Mines Branch.
- Ferguson, Barry Glen. 1985. *Athabasca Oil Sands: Northern Resource Exploration, 1875-1951*. Edmonton: Canadian Plains Research Center.
- Ferreira, Darlene A. 1992. "Oil and Lubicons Don't Mix: A Land Claim in Northern Alberta in Historical Perspective." *The Canadian Journal of Native Studies*, Vol. 12, No. 1: 1-35.
- Friesen, Mark J. 2007. *A River Runs through It: Will Water Rein in Canada's Oil sands Growth?* Research analyst: Calgary: FirstEnergy Capital.
- Gould, Ed. 1976. *Oil: The History of Canada's Oil & Gas industry*. Saanichton, B.C.: Hancock House Publishers.
- Griffiths, Mary, Amy Taylor and Dan Woynillowicz. 2006. *Troubled Waters, Troubling Trends: Technology and Policy Options to Reduce Water Use in Oil and Oil Sands Development in Alberta*. 1st Edition. Edited by Randee Holmes. Drayton Valley, AB: Pembina Institute. Full PDF: http://pubs.pembina.org/reports/TroubledW_Full.pdf
- Hunter, George. 1955. "Athabasca Tar Sands," *The Beaver*. Vol. 34, No. 4: 14-19.
- Kerri, James N. 1970. *Fort McMurray: One of Canada's Resource Frontier Towns*. Winnipeg, Man: s.n.
- McCullough, E.J. and M.C. Wilson. 1982. "A Prehistoric Settlement – Subsistence Model for Northeastern Alberta, Canstar Oil Sands Ltd. Bitumous Sands Leases 33, 92, and 95: A Preliminary Statement." *Canstar Oil Sands Ltd. Environmental Monograph, 1982-1*.
- Miles, Paul. 2009. "Tearing Flesh From the Earth," *Ecologist* Vol. 39, No. 3: 9-11.
- Parker, J. M. and K.W. Tingley. 1980. *History of the Athabasca Oil Sands Region, 1890 to 1960's*. Vol. 1: Socio-economic developments. Vol. 2: Oral History. Alberta Oil Sands Environmental Research Program. Edmonton: Alberta Environment.
- Peter C. Nichols & Associates. 1979. *Overview of Local Economic Development in the Athabasca Oil Sands Region Since 1961*. For Alberta Oil Sands Environmental Research Program. Edmonton: The Program.
- Pratt, Larry. 1976. *The Tar Sands: Syncrude and the Politics of Oil*. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.

- Riche Le, Timothy. 2006. *Alberta's Oil Patch: Its People, Politics & Companies*. Edmonton: Folklore Publishing.
- Saxberg, Nancy and Brian O. K. Reeves. 2003. The First 2000 Years of Oil Sands History: Ancient Hunters at the Northwest Outlet of Glacial Lake Agassiz. In: *Archaeology in Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, Edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar. Medicine Hat: The Archaeological Society of Alberta. 290-323.
- Schindler, David, William Donahue, and John Thompson. 2007. "Running Out of Steam? Oil Sands Development and Water Use in the Athabasca River-Watershed," Edmonton: University of Alberta, Environmental Research and Studies Center.
- Severson-Baker, Chris. 2008. *Taking the Wheel: Correcting the Course of Cumulative Environmental Management in the Athabasca Oil Sands*. Drayton Valley, Alta. : Pembina Institute for Appropriate Development.
- Sheppard, Mary, ed. 1989. *Oil Sands Scientist: The Letters of Karl A. Clark*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press/Alberta Culture and Multiculturalism.
- Woynillawicz, Dan and Chris Severson-Baker. 2006. *Down to the Last Drop?: The Athabasca River and Oil Sands*. Drayton Valley: Pembina Institute.

Natural Gas

- Goodall, D. P. 1957? *An Historical Sketch of Oil and Gas Conservation in Alberta*. Edmonton: s.n
- Orr, Fay. 1989. *Harvesting the Flame: The History of Alberta's Rural Natural Gas Cooperatives*. Edmonton: Reidmore Books.
- Stenson, Fred. 1985. *Waste to Wealth: A History of Gas Processing in Canada*. Calgary: Canadian Gas Processors Association/Canadian Gas Processor Supplier's Association.

Transportation

- Dyer, E. Jerome. 1898. *The Routes and Mineral Resources of North Western Canada*. London: George Philip & Son.
- Edmonton (Alta.). Board of Trade. 1908. *Report of the Committee of the Edmonton Board of Trade on the Transportation Facilities in Existence at the Present Time (1908), to the Peace, Findlay [i.e., Finlay], and MacKenzie River basins from Edmonton: The All-Red Route to the Arctic Ocean, via Edmonton, Alberta, Canada*. Edmonton: s.n.

- Gilpin, John F. 2005. *Roads to Resources: A History of Transportation in Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Road builders & Heavy Construction Association.
- Losey, Timothy C. 1984. *History of the Automobile in Alberta, 1900-1955*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Reynolds-Alberta Museum.
- Rubak, Paul M. 2003. *Big Wheels Across the Prairie: A History of Alberta's Trucking Industry*. Calgary: BWATP Publisher.

Special Topics

- Alberta. Department of Industry and Development. 1961. *Survey of Grande Prairie*. Edmonton.
- Alberta Power Limited. 1982. *The Dispatch of Electric Energy in Alberta*. Alberta: Alberta Power, Edmonton Power, City of Medicine Hat, TransAlta Utilities.
- Alberta Silver and Gold History Committee. 1981. *Always a River to Cross*. Bear Canyon.
- Andruschuk, Sue. 1986. *TransAlta Utilities: 75 Years of Progress*. TransAlta Utilities: 75 Years of Progress.
- Cameron, Eion M. ed. 1983. *Uranium Exploration in Athabasca Basin, Saskatchewan, Canada*. Ottawa: Canada, Geological Survey: Canadian Govt. Pub. Centre.
- Canada. Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. 1967. *Early Canada: a Collection of Historical Photographs by Officers of the Geological Survey of Canada*. Ottawa.
- Christie, R. Morley. 1976. *Zoning in the Athabasca River Basin*. Edmonton, AB: Alberta Energy and Natural Resources, Forest Service.
- Comfort, D. J. and Alberta Salt Company. 1975. *Pass the McMurray Salt Please!: The Alberta Salt Company As Remembered by Three Fort McMurray Pioneers*. Fort McMurray, Alt., Fort McMurray Public Library.
- Green, Dianne. 1992. *In Direct Touch with the Wide World: Telecommunications in the North, 1865-1992*. Whitehorse: NorthwesTel.
- Health and Welfare Canada. 1990. *Mercury, Fish and You. Mercury Questions and Answers*. Medical Services Branch. Ottawa, ON.
- Karaim, B. W. 1975. *Alberta's Fence Post Industry, 1970-74*. Edmonton: Alberta Energy and Natural Resources, Forest Service.

- Intierra Mapping. Northern Miner Press. 2007. *Athabasca Basin Mining and Exploration Activity [cartographic material]: Alberta, Saskatchewan, and Manitoba, Canada*. Toronto, ON: Intierra Mapping: Distributed jointly with The Northern Miner.
- Minion, Robin. 1985. *Hydroelectric Developments in Northern Regions*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- Nasogluak, William and Douglas Billingsley. 1981. "Reindeer Industry in the Western Arctic: Problems and Potential," In: *Proceedings: First International Symposium on Renewable Resources and the Economy of the North*, Banff, Alberta: 86–95.
- Prairie Farm Rehabilitation Administration. 1982. *History of Irrigation in Western Canada*. Canada: Printed by Brigdens.
- Saywell, John. 1975. *One More River: An Essay on the History of Hydro-Electric Construction*. Ottawa: Economic Council of Canada.
- Smith, Kenneth Douglas. 1981. *Principles of Law for Rural Alberta*. Edmonton: Faculty of Extension in cooperation with Dept. of Rural Economy, Faculty of Agriculture and Forestry, University of Alberta.

Economics

- Abele, Frances. 1988. *A New Economic Development Policy for the North? : The Impact of the Canada-U.S. Free Trade Agreement*. Ottawa: Canadian Centre for Policy Alternatives.
- Alberta. Alberta Economic Development. 1982. *Alberta Industry & Resources*. Edmonton: Alberta Economic Development.
- Alberta. Alberta Finance and Enterprise. 2009. *Regional Economic Indicators. North East Region*. Edmonton, Alta.: Alberta Finance and Enterprise.
- Alberta Oil Sands Environmental Research Program. 1978. *A Socioeconomic Evaluation of the Recreational Use of Fish and Wildlife Resources in Alberta, with particular reference to the AOSERP Study Area*. Edmonton: Alberta Environment.
- Asch, Michael. 1976. "Statement in Response to Dr. C. Hobart's Testimony: Socio-Economic Overview of the Mackenzie River Corridor." Edmonton: s. n.
- . 1976. "Past and Present Land-Use by Slavey Indians [i.e. Indians] of the Mackenzie District: Summary of evidence of Michael Asch, Department of Anthropology, University of Alberta, Edmonton, Alberta, Canada, before the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Inquiry." s.l. : s.n.

- . 1978. *The Economics of Dene Self-Determination*. TURNER, D. and SMITH, G.A. Challenging Anthropology. Toronto. McGraw-Hill, Ryerson.
- Boyle, George. 1951. *The Poor Man's Prayer: The Story of Credit Union Beginnings*. New York: Harper and Brothers.
- Collados, C. and T.P. Duane. 1999. "Natural capital and quality of life: A Model for Evaluating the Sustainability of Alternative Regional Development Paths." *Ecological Economics* 30: 441-460.
- Co-West Associates. 1981. *Socio-economic Overview of Northern Alberta*. Edmonton: Northern Alberta Development Council.
- Daschuk, Jim, with Paul Hackett and Scott D. MacNeil. 2006. "Treaties and Tuberculosis: First Nations People in Late 19th Century Western Canada, A Political and Economic Transformation." *Canadian Bulletin of the History of Medicine*, 23: 307-330.
- Gilpin, John F. 1996. "Economic History of Northern Alberta," *Alberta History*. Vol 44, No. 2: 24-28.
- Gosselink, Yvonne Frances. 1984. *Liberal ideology and Dene Development in the Upper Mackenzie Valley [microform]: 1670-1984*. Microfiche. Ottawa: National Library of Canada. 1986.
- Great Plains Research Consultants. 1985. *Jasper National Park: A Social and Economic History*. Ottawa: Parks Canada.
- . 1999. *The Fur Trade in Canada: An Introduction to Canadian Economic History*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.
- . 1984. The Trade of the Slavey and Dogrib at Fort Simpson in the Early Nineteenth Century. In *Subarctic Fur Trade: Native Social and Economic Adaptations*: 99-146. Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- Kupfer, Georg, et al. 1981. *A Social and Economic Overview of Northern Alberta*. Edmonton: The Council.
- MacDonald, Kathleen. 1983. Potential for Agricultural Expansion in Northern Alberta Alberta Agriculture. Edmonton: Resource Economics Branch, Economic Services Division, Alberta Agriculture.
- Miles, Paul. 2009. "Tearing Flesh From the Earth," *Ecologist* Vol. 39 Issue 3: 9-11.
- Nichols Applied Management. 1996. Factors Affecting Future Development in Key

- Economic Sectors in the Peace, Athabasca and Slave River Basins. Edmonton: Northern River Basins Study.
- Peter C. Nichols & Associates. 1979. *Overview of Local Economic Development in the Athabasca Oil Sands Region Since 1961*. For Alberta Oil Sands Environmental Research Program. Edmonton: The Program.
- Potyondi, B. 1996. *Treaty No. 8: Economic Benefits and Four Dene First Nations in the Northwest Territories 1899-1965*. Ottawa: Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Treaty Land Entitlement.
- Ray, Arthur J. 1995. "Commentary on the Economic History of the Treaty 8 Area," *Native Studies Review* 10, No. 2: 169-95.
- Richards, John. 1979. *Prairie Capitalism: Power and Influence in the New West*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.
- Stevenson, Marc and Clifford Hickey. 1995. *Empowering Northern and Native Communities for Social and Economic Control: An Annotated Bibliography*. Edmonton: Canadian Circumpolar Institute.
- Stevenson, Marc et. al. 1995. *Environmental and Economic Issues in Fur Trapping: A Profile of Canada's Fur Trapping Industry and Variables Influencing its Sustainability: An Annotated Bibliography*. Edmonton: Canadian Circumpolar Institute.
- Wai, Lokky. 1989. *The Native Peoples of Canada in Contemporary Society: A Demographic and Socioeconomic Bibliography*. London: Population Studies Centre, University of Western Ontario.
- Woods, Gordon. 1982. *Social and Economic Assessment Study: Greater County of Athabasca: Program Report*. [S.l. : s.n.].

Ecology, Environmental and Natural History

- Alberta Black Fly Coordinating Committee. 1980. *Control of Black Flies in the Athabasca River: Evaluation and Recommendations for Chemical Control of Simulium Arcticum Malloch*. [Edmonton]: Alberta Environment, Pollution Control Division.s
- Alberta Environmental Protection. 1994. *An Inventory of significant natural features in the Birch Mountains - Firebag River integrated resource planning area*. S.l. : D. A. Westworth & Associates Ltd.
- Alberta Environmental Protection. 1996. *Canadian Heritage Rivers System Background Study: Clearwater/Christina Rivers, Alberta*. Calgary: The Company.
- Beckingham, J.D., I.G.W. Corns, and J.H. Archibald. 1966. "Field Guide to Eco-sites of West-Central Alberta." Special Report IX. Edmonton: Canadian Forest Service, Northern Forestry Centre.
- Benke, Arthur C. and Colbert E. Cushing, eds. 2005. *Rivers of North America*. Boston: Academic Press.
- Binnema, Theodore. 2001. *Common and Contested Ground: A Human and Environmental History of the Northwestern Plains*. Norman: University of Oklahoma Press.
- Caldwell, C. J. 1979. *Perception of the Fort McMurray Environment Through Time*. [S.l. :s.n.].
- Conrad, Norman C. 1999. *Reading The Entrails: An Alberta Ecohistory*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Crozier, Jean. 1996. *A Compilation of Archived Writings about Environmental Change in the Peace, Athabasca and Slave River Basins*. Edmonton: Northern River Basins Study.
- Culp, J.M., K.J. Cash, and F.J. Wrona. 2000. "Integrated Assessment of Ecosystem Integrity of Large Northern Rivers: The Northern Rivers Basins Study Example," *Journal of Aquatic Ecosystem Stress and Recovery* 8: 1-5.
- Daschuk, Jim. 2002. "The 1790s Drought on the Canadian Prairies," Technical Report. Prairie Adaptation Research Collaborative (PARC), University of Regina.
- . 2006. Review Essay: "Theodore Binnema's Common and Contested Ground: A Human and Environmental History of the Northwestern Plains." *Prairie Forum* 31: 141-148.

- den Otter, M. 2000. "The Development of Active Management in the Protected Areas of the Foothills Model Forest." *Case Studies in Adaptive Management*, Vol. 5. Hinton: Foothills Model Forest.
- Edwards, Roger Yorke. 1970. *The Mountain Barrier*. Toronto: Natural Science of Canada Limited.
- Environment Canada. 2004. *Northern Rivers Ecosystem Initiative 2004: Collective Findings*. Toronto: Federal Publications Inc.
- . 2004. *Northern Rivers Ecosystem Initiative: Key Findings*. Toronto: Federal Publications Inc.
- Evans, Clinton L. 2002. *The War on Weeds in the Prairie West: An Environmental History*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Fitzharris, Tim. 1983. *The Wild Prairie: A Natural History of the Western Plains*. Toronto: Oxford University Press.
- Frison, G.C. 1975. "Man's Interaction with Holocene Environments on the Plains," *Quaternary Research* 5 (2): 289-300.
- Griebel, Rosemary. 1986. *Landscapes: An Annotated Bibliography on the Natural History of Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Library Services.
- Gummer, W.D., K.J. Cash, F.J. Wrona, and T.D. Prowse. 2000. "The Northern River Basins Study: Context and Design," *Journal of Aquatic Ecosystem Stress and Recovery* 8: 7-16.
- Gunn, Anne, Goo Arlooktoo and David Kaomayok. 1988. "The Contribution of the Ecological Knowledge of Inuit to Wildlife Management in the Northwest Territories," In: *Traditional Knowledge and Renewable Resource Management in Northern Regions*. Edited by Milton M. R. Freeman and Ludwig N. Carbyn. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta.
- Hanan, Zahava. 2004. *An Alberta Bestiary: Animals of the Rolling Hills*. Calgary: University of Calgary Press.
- Hardy, W.G. [ed.-in-chief] 1967. *Alberta: A Natural History*. M.G. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.
- Hewitt, C. Gordon. 1921. *The Conservation of the Wild Life of Canada*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons.
- Hooper, R. A. 1979. *The Navigable Mountain Rivers Study: Summary and Conclusions*. [S.l.]: Natural History Research Division, Parks Canada, Western Region.

- Hunt, C.B. 1974. *Natural Regions of the United States and Canada*. W.H. Freeman, San Francisco.
- Irimoto, Takashi and Takako Yamada, eds. 1995. *Circumpolar Religion and Ecology: An Anthropology of the North*. New York: Columbia University Press.
- Lewis, H.T. and T. Ferguson. 1998. "Yards, Corridors and Mosaics: How to Burn a Boreal Forest," *Human Ecology* 16:1.
- Lewis, Margaret. 1979. *To Conserve a Heritage*. [s.l.]: Alberta Fish & Game Association.
- Loo, Tina. 2007. "Disturbing the Peace: Environmental Change and the Scales of Justice on a Northern River," *Environmental History*, Vol. 12, No. 4.
- Losey, Timothy C. 1978. *The Prehistoric Cultural Ecology of the Western Prairie-Forest Transition Zone, Alberta, Canada [microform]*. Ottawa. National Library of Canada.
- McGillivray, W. Bruce. 1990. *Natural History of the Andrew Lake Region, Northeastern Alberta*. Edmonton: Provincial Museum of Alberta.
- Millar, J. B. 1976. *Wetland Classification in Western Canada: A Guide to Marshes and Shallow Open Water Wetlands in the Grasslands and Parklands of the Prairie Provinces*. Ottawa: Canadian Wildlife Service.
- Morse, Kathryn. 2003. *The Nature of Gold: An Environmental History of the Klondike Gold Rush*. Seattle: University of Washington Press.
- Murphy, P.J. 1985. *History of Forest and Prairie Fire Control Policy in Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Energy and Natural Resources.
- . 2001. "Wildfire in Alberta." Edmonton: Natural Disturbance and Forest Management Symposium, 5 March 2001.
- . 2007. *A Hard Road to Travel: Land, Forests and People in the Upper Athabasca Region*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Bruce Peel Special Collections.
- Piper, Liza and John Sandlos. 2007. "A Broken Frontier: Ecological Imperialism in the Canadian North," *Environmental History*, Vol. 12, No. 4.
- Provincial Museum and Archives of Alberta. *Natural History Division: Natural History Reference List. 1971-1987*. Edmonton: Provincial Museum and Archives of Alberta.
- . 1972. *Significant dates in Alberta's Natural History*. Edmonton: Provincial

Museum and Archives of Alberta.

Reineberg Holt, Faye. 1998. *Out of the Flames: Fires and Firefighting on the Canadian Prairies*. Calgary: Fifth House Publishers.

Ritchie, J.C. 1984. *Past and Present Vegetation of the Far Northwest of Canada*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Roe, F.G. 1972. *The North American Buffalo: A Critical Study of the Species in its Wild State*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.

Russell, Dale E. 1977. *A Vanished World: The Dinosaurs of Western Canada*. Ottawa: National Museum of Natural Sciences.

Sandlos, John. 2001. "From the Outside Looking In: Aesthetics, Politics, and Wildlife Conservation in the Canadian North," *Environmental History*, Vol. 6, No. 1: 6-31.

———. 2002. "Where the Scientists Roam: Ecology, Management and Bison in Northern Canada," *Journal of Canadian Studies* 37: 93–129.

Schindler, David and William Donahue. 2006. "An Impending Water Crisis in Canada's Western Prairie Provinces," National Academy of Sciences.

Severson-Baker, Chris. 2008. *Taking the Wheel: Correcting the Course of Cumulative Environmental Management in the Athabasca Oil Sands*. Drayton Valley, Alta. : Pembina Institute for Appropriate Development.

Spalding, David A. E. 1980. *A Nature Guide to Alberta*. Edmonton: Hurtig Publishers.

Stelfox, Henry. 1999. *Rambling Thoughts of a Wandering Fellow: A Natural History of Wildlife, Native Peoples, Homesteading, and Conservation in Western Alberta: 1906-1968*. 2nd ed. [S.l. : s.n.].

Strong, W.L. and K.R. Leggatt. 1981. *Ecoregions of Alberta*. Alta. En. Nat. Resource, Resource Eval. Plan. Div., Edmonton.

Swainson, Becky. 2009. *Rivers at Risk: The Status of Environmental Flows in Canada*. Toronto: WWF Canada.

Taschereau, P. M. 1985. *The Status of Ecological Reserves in Canada*. Halifax, N.S.: Canadian Council on Ecological Areas and the Institute for Resource and Environmental Studies, Dalhousie University.

Telfer, E. S. 1977. *Forest Practices and Wildlife on Experimental Watersheds at Hinton, Alberta*. Edmonton: Canadian Wildlife Service.

- Thomas, Richard. 1998. *The Boreal Forest Natural Region of Alberta*. Edmonton: The Dept.
- Treude, Erhard. 1979. "Forty Years of Reindeer Herding in the Mackenzie Delta, NWT," *Polarforschung* 45: 121–38.
- White, Robert C. 1996. *Moose, Mice and Muskrats*. Edmonton: Wildrose Press.
- Whitney, Caspar. 1896. *On Snow-Shoes to the Barren Grounds: Twenty-Eight Hundred Miles After Musk-Oxen and Wood-Bison*. London: Osgood, McIlvaine & Co.
- Wiken, E. B. 1996. *Ecozones of Canada*. Ottawa: Environment Canada.
- WWF-Canada. 2009. *Canada's River's at Risk: Environmental Flows and Canada's Freshwater Future*. http://assets.wwf.ca/downloads/canadas_rivers_at_risk.pdf
- Wynn, Graeme. 2007. *Canada and Arctic North America: An Environmental History*. Oxford: ABC-CLIO.

Parks Canada/Provincial Parks

- Alberta. Parks Division. 19?? *Preliminary Natural History Inventory: Alberta Lakes and Parks*. Edmonton: Alberta Parks
- Alberta. Alberta Recreation and Parks. 1980-1988. *The Park: Winagami Lake Provincial Park*. Edmonton: Alberta Recreation and Parks.
- Alberta. Recreation, Parks and Wildlife Foundation. 1983. *Framework for a System Approach to Interpreting Alberta's Natural History: Part 1 - Interpretive Media Materials*. 1983. Edmonton, AB: Recreation, Parks and Wildlife Foundation.
- . 1983. *Inventory of Alberta Natural History Interpretive Media Materials*. Edmonton: Recreation, Parks and Wildlife Foundation.
- Alford, E.O.D. 1924. "With the Forest Rangers in the Rockies. Memoirs of Ethelwyn Octavia Doble Alford, Wife of Forest Ranger B.P. Alford." Edmonton: Alberta Sustainable Resource Development, Library.
- Back, Joe. 1959. *Horses, Hitches and Rocky Trails*. Chicago: Swallow Press.
- Beaverlodge and District Historical Society. 1974. *Beaverlodge to the Rockies Supplement*. Peace River, AB.
- . 1976. *Beaverlodge to the Rockies Supplement*. Peace River, AB.

- Brink, Jack, and B. Dawe. 1986. An Introduction to the Archaeology of the Grande Cache Region in the North Alberta Rocky Mountains. In: *Eastern Slopes Prehistory: Selected Papers*, edited by B. Ronaghan, pp. 161-246. Edmonton: Archaeological Survey of Alberta Occasional Paper No. 30.
- Camp, F. 1993. *Roots in the Rockies*. Frank Camp Ventures, Ucluelet, B.C.
- Canada. National Historic Parks and Sites. Research Publications Section. *Manuscript report series (discontinued)*. Ottawa: The Section.
- Coleman, A.P. 1999. *The Canadian Rockies: New and Old Trails*. Calgary: Aquila Books.
- Davis, T. O. "Report as to the Value of that Portion of the Dominion Lying North of the Saskatchewan Watershed and East of the Rocky Mountains," Appendix I, *Journals of the Senate of Canada*, 1906–07.
- Dawson, George M. 1886. "Preliminary report on the physical and geological features of that portion of the Rocky Mountains between latitudes 49 degrees and 51 degrees 30 minutes." In Annual Report, Vol. 1, 1885. *Geological & Natural History Survey of Canada*.
- Dwight, T.W. 1913. "Forest Conditions in the Rocky Mountain Forest Reserve." *Forestry Branch Bulletin* 33, Department of the Interior, Ottawa.
- Feddema-Leonard, Susan. 2007. *People & Peaks of Willmore Wilderness Park, 1800s to Mid 1900s*. Grande Cache, Alta.: Co-published by Willmore Wilderness Foundation & Whitefox Circle Inc.
- Fedirchuk, Gloria J. 1982. *Final Report: Historical Resources Impact Assessment Proposed Alberta Provincial Parks Development Projects*. Edmonton: Archaeological Survey of Alberta.
- Gadd, B. 1995. *Handbook of the Canadian Rockies*. Corax Press, Jasper.
- Gilliat, Neil W. 1998. *If Moose Could Only Talk: Stories from the Canadian Rockies in the Early Days of Alberta Forest Service*. Brightest Pebble Publishing, Edmonton.
- Haworth, Paul Leland. 1917. *On the Headwaters of Peace River: A Narrative of a Thousand-mile Canoe Trip to a Little-Known Range of the Canadian Rockies*. Scribner.
- Hay, W. 1988. *Athabasca River Sand Hills integrated resource inventory and evaluations*. Edmonton: Alberta Forestry, Lands and Wildlife, Land Information Services Division.

- Kay, C.E., B. Patton, C.A. White. 2000. "Historical Wildlife Observations in the Canadian Rockies: Implications for Ecological Integrity," *Canadian Field-Naturalist*, Vol. 114, No. 4: 561-583.
- Keddell, Georgina. 1963. *Muskeg Maze*. Fort St. John, B.C., Alaska Highway Publications.
- Keiran, Monique. 2003. *Reading the Rocks: A Biography of Ancient Alberta*. Drumheller. Royal Tyrrell Museum. Previously published under the title: *The Land Before Us: The Making of Ancient Alberta* Red Deer Press, 1998.
- Lothian, W.F. 1987. *A Brief History of Canada's National Parks*. Environment Canada, Ottawa.
- Luckman, Brian H. 1996. "Reconciling the Glacial and Dendrochronological Records for the Past Millennium in the Canadian Rockies," In: *Climatic Variations and Forcing Mechanisms of the Last 2000 Years*, P.D. Jones, R.S. Spradley and J. Souzel. eds. New York: Springer Verlag, 85-108.
- McInnes, C. M. 1930. *In the Shadow of the Rockies*. London: Rivingtons.
- McNamee, Kevin. 1993. *From Wild Places to Endangered Spaces: A History of Canada's National Parks*. *Parks and Protected Areas in Canada*. Edited by Philip Dearden and Rick Rollins. Toronto: Oxford University Press.
- Minion, Robin. 1985. *Canadian National Parks*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- National Parks Branch. 1964. "National Parks Policy." Ottawa: Northern Affairs and Natural Resources.
- Parks Canada, ARC Branch, Planning Division. 1978. Western Region. Natural History Research Division. *The Athabasca River: A Description and Evaluation of recreational potential for canoeing and kayaking*. [Calgary] : The Dept.
- . National Historic Sites. 1995. *Catalogue*. Ottawa: National Historic Sites, Parks Canada.
- Pearce, William M. 1962 "Establishment of National Parks in the Rockies," *Alberta History* 10: 8-17.
- Reeves, Rebecca. 2007. *The State of Alberta's Parks and Protected Areas: An Analysis of the Challenges and Opportunities for Ensuring Ecological Integrity*. Edmonton: CPAWS Northern Alberta.

- Roth, Clayton. 2005. *The Athabasca River [cartographic material]: Rocky Mountain Region, Jasper to Whitecourt*. Calgary: Watershed Guiding and Mapping.
- Samuel, Alan Edouard. 1995. *Treasures of Canada*. 2nd Edition. Toronto: E. Kent Inc.
- Southesk, Earl of. 1875. *Saskatchewan and the Rocky Mountains*. Edinburgh: Edmonston and Douglas.
- . 1969. *Saskatchewan and the Rocky Mountains: A Diary and narrative of travel, sport, and adventure, during a journey through the Hudson's Bay Company Territories in 1859 and 1860*. Charles E. Tuttle, Vermont.
- Swanson, Earl Herbert. 1972. *Birch Creek: human ecology in the cool desert of the Northern Rocky Mountains 9,000 B.C. - A.D. 1850*. Pocatello, Idaho State University Press.
- Taylor, C. J. 1981. "Parks Canada Manuscript Report Series," *Archivaria* 12: 65-119. (1983 Bibliography A-2).
- . 1990. *Negotiating the Past: The Making of Canada's National Historic Parks and Sites*. Montréal: McGill-Queen's University Press
- Vitt, Dr. and B.J. Nicholson. 2000. Chapter on the Mackenzie River Basin and the Wetlands Within, in: *The World's Largest Wetlands*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Von Hauff, Donna, ed. 1992. *Alberta's Parks: Our Legacy*. Edmonton: Alberta Recreation, Parks and Wildlife Foundation.
- Waiser, Bill. 1995. *Park Prisoners: The Untold Story of Western Canada's National Parks, 1915-1946*. Calgary: Fifth House.
- Wilcox, Walter D. 1897. *Camping in the Canadian Rockies*. G.P. Putnam, New York.

Jasper

- Achuff, P.L. and I.G.W. Corns. 1985. "Plants New To Alberta From Banff and Jasper National Parks," *Canadian Field-Naturalist* 99:94-98.
- Anderson, Ross and B.O.K. Reeves. 1975. "Jasper National Park Archeological Inventory," No. 158.
- Beers, D. 1996. *Jasper-Robson: A Taste of Heaven*. Calgary: Highline Publishing.
- Bridgland, M.P., and R. Douglas. 1917. *Description of and Guide to Jasper Park*.

- Ottawa: Department of the Interior.
- Canada Department of Interior. 1914. "Annual report of the Superintendent of Jasper Park." Sessional Papers 1913-1914, Ottawa.
- Canadian Heritage Rivers Board. 1999-1945. *The Athabasca River, Alberta (Jasper National Park)*. Ottawa: Canadian Heritage Rivers Board.
- Collinson, Helen. 1979. *One's Man's Mountains: Joe Weiss in Jasper*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Collections.
- Davidson, L. 1990. "Park Policy and Development in Jasper National Park." Jasper National Park.
- Elliot, Jack. 1970-71. "Jasper National Park and Ya-Ha Tinda Ranch Archeological Survey," No. 44.
- Gadd, B. 1995. *Handbook of the Canadian Rockies*. Corax Press, Jasper.
- Gainer, Brenda. 1981. *The Human History of Jasper National Park*. Parks Canada, Ottawa.
- Great Plains Research Consultants. 1985. *Jasper National Park: A Social and Economic History*. Ottawa: Parks Canada.
- Guimond, Julie Katharine. 2001. *The Effects of River Connectivity on Floodplain Wetland Ecology in Jasper National Park, Alberta*. M.Sc., Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Hart, E.J. 1979. *Diamond Hitch: The Early Outfitters and Guides of Banff and Jasper*. Summerthought, Banff.
- Hart, H.R. 1980. *History of Hinton*. Published by Mrs. Hazel Hart, Hinton.
- James Shand Harvey interviewed by Mr. and Mrs. Marx Truxler, 8 March 1967. Jasper: Jasper-Yellowhead Historical Society.
- Jasper Park Collieries papers. Jasper: Jasper Yellowhead Archives, Pocahontas papers.
- Klyne, F.M. 1829. "Jasper House Post Journal, 1829-30." B.94/a02, HBC (Film IM 65), PAC. Archives of the Hudson's Bay Company, Winnipeg.
- Kucera, Richard E. 1973 [1972]. *Probing the Athabasca Glacier: Case History of a Glacier in the Columbia Icefield, Jasper National Park*. Vancouver: Evergreen

- MacLaren, I.S. 1999. "Cultured Wilderness in Jasper National Park." *Journal of Canadian Studies* 34: 7-58. 'Attitudes toward wilderness in the Athabasca River Valley of Alberta, Canada, and the ways in which those attitudes have shaped development and nature tourism in the region since the early nineteenth century.'
- . 2007. *Culturing Wilderness in Jasper National Park: Studies in Two Centuries of Human History in the Upper Athabasca River Watershed*. Edmonton: University of Alberta Press. Illustrations, maps, bibliography, index.
- Moberly, Walter. 1873. "Detailed Report of Operations in the Rocky Mountains by the Party under the charge of Walter Moberly, Esq., during the year 1872." Letter to Sandford Fleming, Esq., Engineer-in-Chief, Canadian Pacific Railway, Ottawa, from Walter Moberly, District Engineer, C.P.R., Athabasca Depot, Jasper Valley, 13 January 1873. Appendix G. Sessional Papers.
- Moberly, Henry John. 1924. "The First Trail to Jasper House," *The Beaver*. Vol. 4, No. 6: 215.
- Pickard, R. 1986. "An archaeological assessment of the Patricia Lakes site in Jasper National Park." In *Eastern Slopes Prehistory: Selected papers*. B. Ronaghan (ed.) Archaeological Survey of Alberta, Occ. Paper 30. Edmonton: Alberta Culture, Historical Resources.
- Rhemtulla, J.M. 1999. *Eighty Years of Change: The Montane Vegetation of Jasper National Park*. Msc. Thesis, University of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Roth, Clayton. 2005. *The Athabasca River [cartographic material]: Rocky Mountain Region, Jasper to Whitecourt*. Calgary: Watershed Guiding and Mapping.
- Scace, Robert C. 1973. *Banff, Jasper, Kootenay and Yoho: An Initial Bibliography of the Contiguous Canadian Rocky Mountains National Parks*. Ottawa: Indian Affairs and Northern Development, National and Historic Parks Branch.
- Siga, Verna. 1996. "Otto brothers, Jack, Closson and Bruce." *Jasper Reflections*. Jasper Community History.
- Smith, Cyndi. 1985. *Jasper Park Lodge: In the Heart of the Canadian Rockies*. Coyote Books, Waterton Park, AB.
- Snyder, A.E. 1897. "Patrol report: Inspector A.E. Snyder, Edmonton to Jasper House, Athabasca District, 1897. North West Mounted Police, Edmonton, 28 October, 1897." Appendix M, Sessional Papers (No. 15)A. 1898.
- Swift, Lewis. 1910. "Extracts from a diary of acting game guardian Lewis J. Swift in the year 1910 at Jasper Park." Deciphered by George Camp. Sept. 1965. Jasper Yellowhead Archives.

Tande, G.F. 1977. *Forest fire History Around Jasper Townsite. Jasper National Park, Alberta*. Msc thesis. Department of Botany. University of Alberta, Edmonton.

Taylor, C. J. 2004. *The Railway and Jasper National Park*. Canada: Western Canada Service Centre, Parks Canada.

Taylor, W.C. 1994. *Highland Soldiers: The Story of a Mountain Regiment*. Coyote Books, Canmore, AB. Distributed by Jasper-Yellowhead Historical Society.

Wallace, Rod. 2003. "Jasper Raven Totem Pole." Memo from Rod Wallace, Cultural Resources Specialist, Jasper National Park.

Woodbuffalo

Brower, Jennifer. 2008. *Buffalo National Park, 1909-1939*. Edmonton: Athabasca University Press.

Canada. Dept. of Northern Affairs and National Resources. 1957. *Wood Buffalo National Park*. Canada: Department of Northern Affairs and National Resources.

Graham, Maxwell. 1923. *Canada's Wild Buffalo: Observation in the Wood Buffalo Park*. Ottawa, Department of the Interior.

McCormack, Patricia Alice. 1992. "The Political Economy of Bison Management in Wood Buffalo National Park," *Arctic* 454: 367–80.

Novakowski, Nicholas Stephen. 1967. *Wood Buffalo National Park*. [s.l. : s.n.]

Potyondi, Barry. 1979. "Wood Buffalo National Park: An Historical Overview and Source Study," No. 345.

———. 1982. "Dual Allegiance, the History of Wood Buffalo National Park 1929-1965," No. 104.

Proch, Douglas and Marc Stevenson. 1982. "Archeological Research in Wood Buffalo National Park, Alberta/N.W.T., 1980-82," *Alberta Archeological Review*. Vol. 5: 3-14.

Scace & Associates Ltd. 1974. *Wood Buffalo National Park, A Literature Review*. Calgary, Alta.: Scace & Associates Ltd.

Stevenson, Marc. 1981. "Preliminary Archeological Reconnaissance in Wood Buffalo National Park," No. 159.

- . 1981. "Peace Point—A Stratified Prehistoric Campsite Complex in Wood Buffalo National Park, AB. NO. 158.
- . 1982. "Archeological Assessment of the Peace Point Site, Wood Buffalo National Park, Alberta/N.W.T.: A Preliminary Report," No. 174.
- . 1983. "Scratching the Surface—Three Years of Archeological Investigation in Wood Buffalo Park, Alberta/N.W.T.—Preliminary Summary Report," No. 201.

Geology, Geography and Climate

- Abouguendia, Z. M. ed. 1981. *Athabasca Sand Dunes in Saskatchewan. Mackenzie River Basin Study Report Supplement 7*. Regina: Environment Canada.
- Bamforth, Douglas B. 1990. "An Empirical Perspective on the Little Ice Age Climatic Change on the Great Plains," *Plains Anthropologist*, 35: 359-366.
- . 1990. "What they Saw: The Climatic and Environmental Context for Euro-Canadian Settlement in Alberta." *Prairie Forum* 24: 1-40.
- Bayrock, L. A. 1972. *Geology of the Peace-Athabasca River Delta Region, Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Geological Survey.
- Beaudoin, Alwynne. 2003. Climate and Landscape of the Last 2000 Years in Alberta. In *Archaeology In: Alberta, A View from the New Millennium*, edited by Jack W. Brink and John F. Dormaar, pp. 10-45. Medicine Hat: Archaeological Society of Alberta.
- Beaudoin, A. B. and G. A. Oetelaar. 2006. "The Day the Dry Snow Fell: The Record of a 7627-year-old Disaster," In: *Alberta Formed, Alberta Transformed, Volume 1*. Edited by M. Payne, D. Wetherell, and C. Kavanaugh, pp. 36-53. Co-published by University of Alberta Press and University of Calgary Press.
- Bliss, W.L. 1939. *An Archaeological and Geological Reconnaissance of Alberta, Mackenzie Valley, and Upper Yukon*. American Philosophical Society, Year Book 1938: 136-139.
- Bobrowsky, P. T., N. R. Catto, J. Brink, B. E. Spurling, T. H. Gibson and N. W. Rutter 1990. "Archaeological Geology of Western and Northwestern Canada," In: *Archaeological Geology of North America*, edited by Norman P. Lasca and Jack Donahue, 87-122.
- Briffa, K.R., P.D. Jones, F.H. Schweingruber and T.J. Osborn. 1998. "Influence of Volcanic Eruptions on Northern Hemisphere Temperatures over the Past 600 Years," *Nature* 393: 450-455.

- Bruce, James P. 2006. *Implications of a 2°C Global Temperature Rise on Canada's Water Resources: Athabasca River and oil sands development, Great Lakes and Hydropower production*. Toronto, Ont.: World Wildlife Fund Canada.
- Bryson, Reid A., and Thomas J. Murray. 1977. *Climates of Hunger: Mankind and the World's Changing Weather*. Madison: University of Wisconsin Press.
- Bureau of Climate Change. *The State of Canada's Environment, 1996*. Ottawa : Minister of Public Works and Government.
- Burn, C. 2002. "Climate," In: Black and Fehr, ed. *Natural History of the Western Arctic*. Altona, Manitoba: Friesen Printing.
- Canada, Department of the Interior. 1898. "Dominion Lands Survey," *Sessional Papers*, Vol. XXXII, #10: 5, 66-68.
- . 1895. *Geological Survey of Canada: Report on Progress, 1894*. Ottawa: Depart. of the Interior.
- . 1896. *Geological Survey of Canada: Report on Progress, 1895*. Ottawa: Depart. of the Interior.
- Case, R.A. and G.M. MacDonald. 1995. "A Dendroclimatic Reconstruction of Annual Precipitation on the Western Canadian Prairies since A.D. 1505 from *Pinus flexilis* James." *Quaternary Research* 44: 267-275.
- . 2003. "Tree Ring Reconstructions of Streamflow for Three Canadian Prairie Rivers." *Journal of the American Water Resources Association* 39, No. 3: 707-716.
- Cohen, Stewart Jay. 1995. *The Potential Effects of Climate Change in the Peace, Athabasca and Slave River Basins: A Discussion Paper*. Edmonton: Northern River Basins Study.
- Cruikshank, Julie. 2001. "Glaciers and Climate Change: Perspectives from Oral Tradition," *Arctic* 54, No. 4: 377-393.
- Daschuk, Jim. 2002. "The 1790s Drought on the Canadian Prairies," Technical Report. Prairie Adaptation Research Collaborative (PARC), University of Regina.
- . 2008. "Horses, Climate and War on the Northern Great Plains to 1806," Paper presented at the American Society for Environmental History, Boise, Idaho.
- Dyke, A., Andrews, J.T., P.U, C., England, J., Miller, G., Shaw, J., and Veillette, J. 2002.

- “The Laurentide and Innuitian Ice Sheets During the Last Glacial Maximum,” *Quaternary Science Reviews*, 21: (1-3): 9-33.
- Edwards, W. A. D. 1990. *Placer Gold Occurrences in Alberta*. Edmonton: Alberta Research Council, Alberta Geological Survey.
- Fagan, Brian. 2000. *The Little Ice Age: How Climate Made History, 1300-1850*. New York: Basic Books.
- Fleisher, Sarah *et al.* 2009. “Environmental Injustice in the Canadian Far North: Persistent Organic Pollutants and Arctic Climate Impacts,” In: *Speaking for Ourselves Environmental Justice in Canada*. Edited by Julian Agyeman, *et al.* Vancouver: University of British Columbia Press.
- Hall, R.I., P.R. Leavitt, R. Quinlan, A.S. Dixit, and J.P. Smol. 1999. “Effects of Agriculture, Urbanization and Climate on Water Quality in the Northern Great Plains.” *Limnol. Oceanography*, 44: 739-756.
- Harington, C.R., ed. 1982. *The Year Without a Summer?: World Climate in 1816*. Ottawa: Canadian Museum of Nature.
- Harington, C.R. 1985. Climatic Change in Canada, Critical Periods in the Quaternary Climate History of Northern North America. in *Quaternary Climate History of Northern North America*. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada: 75-105. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- Hooper, R. A. 1979. *The Navigable Mountain Rivers Study: Summary and Conclusions*. [S.l.]: Natural History Research Division, Parks Canada, Western Region.
- Hudson, E. 1997. The Climate of the Peace, Athabasca, and Slave River Basins. Report No. 124. Northern River Basins Study, Edmonton, Alberta.
- Jozsa, L. A, Northern Forest Research Centre (Canada), and Canadian Forestry Service. 1984. *How Climate Affects Tree Growth in the Boreal Forest*. Edmonton: Canadian Forestry Service.
- Mathews, W.H. 1980. *Retreat of the Last Ice Sheets in Northeastern British Columbia and Adjacent Alberta*. Ottawa: Energy, Mines and Resources Canada, Bulletin 331.
- McEvoy, James. 1900. “Report on the geology and natural resources of the country traversed by the Yellow Head Pass Route from Edmonton to Tete Jaune Cache comprising portions of Alberta and British Columbia.” Ottawa: Geological Survey of Canada.
- Meltzer, D.J. 1999. “Human Responses to Middle Holocene (Altithermal) Climates on

- the North American Great Plains,” *Quaternary Research* 52: 404-416.
- Post, R. T. 2004. *Stratigraphy and Sedimentology of the Athabasca group in the Net Lake-Maybelle River Area, Northeastern Alberta*. Edmonton, Alta.: Alberta Energy and Utilities Board: Alberta Geological Survey.
- Raup, Hugh Miller and George W. Argus. 1982. *The Lake Athabasca sand dunes of Northern Saskatchewan and Alberta, Canada*. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.
- Robock, Alan. 1979. “The “Little Ice Age”: Northern Hemisphere Average Observations and Model Calculations,” *Science* 206: 1402-1404.
- Roe, Frank Gilbert. 1952. "Early Agriculture in Western Canada in Relation to Climatic Stability," *Agricultural History*, Vol. 26, No. 3: 104-123
- Sauchyn, David. 2004. “A 250-Year Climate and Human History of Prairie Drought.” in *Proceedings of the Canadian Prairie Drought Workshop*.
- Skinner, W. 1985. “The Effect of Major Volcanic Eruptions on the Canadian Climate,” *Syllogeus* 55: Climatic Change in Canada 5: Critical periods in Quaternary Climate History of Northern North America. Ed. C.R. Harrington, Ottawa: National Museums of Canada, 75-105.
- Stahle, D.W. et al. “Tree Ring Data Document 16th Century Megadrought Over North America.” *EOS: Transactions of the American Geophysical Union* 81(2000): 121-123.
- Tyrrell, J.B with D.B. Dowling. 1897. *Report on the Country Between Athabasca Lake and the Churchill River in Canada.*: Ann. Rep. Geol. Surv. of Canada, Vol. III, Part D. n.p.
- Vance, Robert E, Alwynne B Beaudoin, and Brian H Luckman. 1995. “The Paleoecological Record of 6 Ka BP Climate in the Canadian Prairie Provinces,” *Geographie Physique et Quaternaire*, Vol. 49, No. 1: 81-98.
- Walker, E. G. 1992. “The Gowen Sites: Cultural Responses to Climatic Warming on the Northern Plains (7500-5000 B.P.).” *Archaeological Survey of Canada Mercury Series Paper*, Ottawa: Canadian Museum of Civilization.
- Wall, E., B. Smit and J. Wandel. eds. 2007. *Farming in a Changing Climate: Agricultural Adaptation in Canada*. Vancouver: UBC Press.
- Warkentin, John. 1964. *The Western Interior of Canada: A Record of Geographical Discovery, 1612-1917*. Toronto: McClelland and Stewart.

Unpublished Sources

- Carscallen, Anne. 1975. "Historic Trails Report for the Alberta Trails Task Force." Typescript, Historic Sites Service, Alberta Culture.
- Davis, W.L. 1979. *Hudson's Bay Company at Lac La Biche 1853-1917*. Unpublished Report, on file, Archeological Survey of Alberta, Edmonton.
- de Candole, Richard. 1985. "Black Settlement Celebrates." Typescript, Athabasca, Alberta.
- Hart, B.C. Memoirs of the Athabasca Area. Manuscript, Edmonton: Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Heslop, Ben. 1985. "The Untold Legend of Captain Shot." Typescript, Athabasca Alberta.
- Holmes, Mrs. Robert. Memoirs of the Athabasca and Peace River Areas. Manuscript, Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Knight, Allen. Correspondence, 1918-1919. Athabasca Archives.
- Little, Archdeacon Robert. "Athabasca Landing." Typescript, Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Little, Marian. "The Glorious Company." Typescript, Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- MacKinnon, M. (n.d.) "Northward Ho! Or the Great Waterways Road." Unpublished Manuscript, on file, Glenbow-Alberta Institute.
- Oppen, W. 1972. "Athabasca Landing." Honours Essay. Provincial Archives of Alberta.
- Peace-Athabasca Delta Project. n.d. A collection of general information on the Peace-Athabasca Delta Project. [s.l. : s.n.].
- Peace-Athabasca Delta Project. n.d. A Collection of information on the History of the Fort Chipewyan area. [s.l. : s.n.] Summary: *Two unpublished texts on the history of the Fort Chipewyan area. Item 1 is a chronological summary of the Fort's history between 1715-1970. Item 2 gives notes on ice conditions and water levels from 1820-71. Submitted by R.G. Wuetherick to the Peace-Athabasca Delta Project.*
- Peace-Athabasca Delta Project. n.d. A collection of information on socio-economic

- conditions in the Peace-Athabasca Delta. [s.l. : s.n.]. Summary: *Twenty-three unpublished reports, correspondence, and data on the socio-economic (fishing, trapping, tourism, forestry, agriculture) conditions of the Peace-Athabasca Delta before and after the construction of the Bennett Dam. Relates hydrological and ecological studies to socio-economic assessment. Includes navigation and transportation problems in the Delta. Recommends beneficial improvements. Contributed by professional biologists, engineers, socio-economic consultants (Moncrieff et al.) and Resources Dept., Fort Chipewyan.*
- Peace-Athabasca Delta Project. n.d. A collection of information on the geology of the Peace-Athabasca Delta. [s.l. : s.n.]. Summary: *Ten Unpublished items on the geologic conditions of the Peace-Athabasca Delta, 1971-72, mainly contributed by Dr. L.A. Bayrock of the Research Council of Alberta, 1971. Items 4-10 are maps, 43 x 65 cm. folded to 21 x 17 cm. in back pocket. Subjects include "Generated Bedrock Geology", "Relative Ages of Delta Portions", and "Areas of Wave Action".*
- Pearce, William. "Report of the Drainage Area of the Peace and Athabasca Rivers, 1908." Typescript 1913, Special Collections, Cameron Library, Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- . "Description of the Country, Edmonton to Athabasca Landing." Typescript, 1913, Special Collections, Cameron Library, Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Rowand, E. (n.d.) "Entrepot of the North." Unpublished Manuscript, Lac La Biche Archives, Lac La Biche, Alberta.
- Sanders, Constance J. Personal Diary, 1910-1911. Manuscript, Athabasca Archives.
- Sanders, Gilda. 1979. "The Anglican Diocese of Athabasca." Typescript, Athabasca Archives.
- Smythe, Terry. 1968. "Thematic Study of the Fur Trade in the Canadian West: 1670-1870." Unpublished Manuscript, on file, Historic Sites and Monuments Board of Canada, Ottawa.

Theses and Dissertations

- Abel, Peter M. 1972. *Diversion of the Athabasca, Smoky and Peace Rivers into the North Saskatchewan River*. M.Sc., The University of Manitoba.
- Allardyce, John. 1989. *W.L. Morton's Bias of Prairie Politics As An Analytical Approach to the Study of Western Canadian Political History: A Historiographical Critique*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada. Thesis (M.A.)--University of Manitoba.
- Arnold, Thomas G. 2006. *The Ice-Free Corridor: Biogeographic Highway or Environmental Cul-de-Sac*. PHD thesis. Vancouver: Simon Fraser University.
- Asselin, Jodie Dawn. 2007. *Ways of Knowing: Western Canadian Agriculturalists and Local Knowledge*. Thesis (M.A.) Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Bailey, Bruce Gregory, 2008. *The Canadianization of American Settlers in Alberta, 1900—1920*. M.A., University of Alberta.
- Bailey, Patricia Gayle. 2003. *A Home in the Upper Athabasca Valley: The Aboriginal Homesteaders in the Nineteenth Century* M.A. Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Beaudin, Donna Karen. 1991. *The State and Chartered Monopolies: The Hudson's Bay Company, c. 1740-1754*. Thesis (M.A.)--University of Alberta.
- Black, Cherylee Margaret. 2004. *Physical Indicators of Ice-Jam-Induced Flooding and the History of Flood Frequency in Cores Taken from Lakes within the Peace-Athabasca Delta, Northern Alberta*. M.Sc., Winnipeg: University of Manitoba.
- Bower, Caroline J. 1973. *Petrographic Studies of the Northwestern Plains Ceramics*. M.A. University of Calgary.
- Brandak, George Michael. 1972. *A Study of Missionary Activity in the Diocese of Athabasca, 1884-1903*. Thesis (M.A.)--Waterloo Lutheran University.
- Brown, Jennifer S. H. 1976. *Company Men and Native Families: Fur Trade Social and Domestic Relations in Canada's Old Northwest*. Thesis (Ph. D.)--University of Chicago.
- Calliou, Brian Louis, 2000. *Losing the Game: Wildlife Conservation and the Regulation of First Nations Hunting in Alberta, 1880—1930*. LL.M., University of Alberta.
- Campbell, Sheila, 2005. *Branding the Last Best West: Regionalism, Tourism, and the Construction of the Tourist Gaze in Alberta, 1905—1940*. M.A., University of Alberta.

- Champagne, Juliette Marthe. 1990. *Lac La Biche: une communauté métisse au XIX^e siècle*. Thesis (M.A.)--University of Alberta.
- Chastko, Paul Anthony, 2002. *Developing Alberta's Oil Sands, 1920—2002*. Ph.D., Ohio University.
- Clintberg, Ernest Cyril, 2005. *Changing Understandings of Equity: Alberta's Funding of Public Education (1970 to 2000)*. Ed.D., University of Alberta.
- Conaty, Gerald Thomas. 1978. *The Wentzel Lake Site: A Stratified Prehistoric Archaeological Site in the Caribou Mountains, Northern Alberta*. M.A., Memorial University of Newfoundland.
- Daniel, Richard. 1977. "Indian Rights and Hinterland Resources: The Case of Northern Alberta," MA Thesis, University of Alberta.
- Davis, Roderick Leigh. 1978. *Pasture Productivity and Climate in the Peace River Region*. M.Sc., McMaster University.
- Dijks, Ineke Johanna. 1994. *Rails to "The Great Inland Empire": The Canadian National Railway, Colonization and Settlement in Alberta, 1925-1930, With Special Reference to the Peace River Region*. M.A., Queen's University.
- Duncan, Kate. 1982. *Bead Embroidery of the Northern Athapaskans: Style, Design, Evolution, and Transfer*. Unpublished Ph.D. Thesis. University of Washington.
- Dyce, Matt. 2006. *A Souvenir from the North: Images, Narratives, and Power in the Athabasca-Mackenzie River Basin, 1882—1914*. M.A., Ottawa: Carleton University.
- Gadacz, Rene R. 1984. *Thesis and Dissertation Titles and Abstracts on the Anthropology of Canadian Indians, Inuit and Metis from Canadian Universities. Report 1, 1970-1982*. National Museums of Canada. Mercury Series. Canadian Ethnology Service. Paper no. 95.
- Glover, Brian William, 1979. Late Quaternary River Terrace Evolution in Part of the Athabasca River Valley. M.Sc., University of Alberta (Canada).
- Guimond, Julie Katharine. 2001. *The Effects of River Connectivity on Floodplain Wetland Ecology in Jasper National Park, Alberta*. M.Sc., Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Hewitt, Steven Roy, 1997. *"Old Myths Die Hard": The Transformation of the Mounted Police in Alberta and Saskatchewan, 1914-1939*. Ph.D., The University of Saskatchewan.

- Hoffman, Ross. 2006. *Rekindling the Fire: The Impact of Raymond Harris's Work with the Plains Cree*. Thesis. Trent University.
- Irwin, Robert Scott. 1995. *The Emergence of Regional Identity: The Peace River Country, 1910-1946*. Ph.D., University of Alberta.
- Kelly, Terrance Frederick. 1985. *Comptroller Fred White and the Arctic Presence of the RNWMP 1903-1911*. Thesis (M.A.), University of Alberta.
- Klimko, Olga. 1994. *The Archaeology of Land Based Fur Trade Posts in Western Canada: A History and Critical Analysis*, Ph.D. Dissertation, Department of Archaeology, Simon Fraser University, Vancouver.
- Lawrence, Bertha. 1936. *A Survey of the materials to be found in the Provincial Legislative Library, Alberta, for a study of Canadian history and more particularly that of Western Canada*. Thesis (M.A.)--University of Alberta.
- Lillos, Brian Martin. 1977. *Selective Studies in Musical Analysis of Beaver Indian Dreamer Songs: A Structuralistic Approach in Ethnomusicology*. Microfiche. Ottawa. National Library of Canada. Thesis (M.Mus.) Vancouver: University of British Columbia
- Mackie, Marlene. 1971. *The Accuracy of Folk Knowledge Concerning Alberta Indians, Hutterites, and Ukrainians: An Available Data Stereotype Validation Technique*. Thesis (M.A.)--Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- May, Ronald William. 1968. *Geology of the Peace River, Viking, Joli Fou and "Notikewin" Formations, Kaybob Area, Northern Alberta*. M.Sc., Calgary: University of Calgary.
- McIntaggart Massey, Lesley , 1995. *"Alberta's Own": The Provincial Police*. M.A., University of Calgary.
- McLean, James Ross. 1969. *The Upper Cretaceous Judith River Formation in the Canadian Great Plains; Its History and Lithostratigraphy*. Saskatoon: Thesis--University of Saskatchewan.
- Meijer Drees, Laurie, 1997. *A History of the Indian Association of Alberta, 1939-1959*, Ph.D., University of Calgary.
- Minion, Robin. 1985. *Partial Listing of Theses Related to Native Peoples*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, University of Alberta.
- . 1986. *Master's Theses: Northern Canada*. Edmonton, Alta.: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies, the University of Alberta.

- . 1986. *Doctoral Dissertations: Northern Canada*. Edmonton: Boreal Institute for Northern Studies.
- Mitham, Peter James. 1994. *Dementia Borealis: The Canadian North in the Verse of Robert Service*. Thesis (M.A.)--University of Alberta.
- Moffett, R' Chie Kelly, 2007. *Furrows of Stone: Race, Politics, and the Alberta Metis Land Question, 1932—1936*. M.A., Simon Fraser University.
- Molenkamp, Freda Joanne, 1998. *Rural and Urban: Experiences of Female School Teachers who Taught in Alberta, 1905-1930*. M.Sc., University of Alberta.
- Nicholson, Barbara Jean. 1974. *Feminism in the Prairie Provinces to 1916*. Thesis (M.A.)--University of Calgary.
- Nicks, Gertrude C. 1969. *The Archaeology of Two Hudson's Bay Company Posts: Buckingham House (1792-1800) and Edmonton House (1810-1813)*. Master's Thesis, University of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Parker, James M. 1967. *The Fur Trade of the Fort Chipewyan on Lake Athabasca, 1778-1835*. Edmonton: Department of History, University of Alberta.
- Porsild, Charlene L. 1994. *Culture, Class and Community: New Perspectives on the Klondike Gold Rush, 1896-1903*. Thesis (Ph.D)--Carleton University.
- Rennie, Bradford James, 1999. *The United Farmers and Farm Women of Alberta: The Development of a Movement, 1909-1921*. Ph.D., University of Victoria.
- Rhemtulla, J.M. 1999. *Eighty Years of Change: The Montane Vegetation of Jasper National Park*. Msc. Thesis, University of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Ridington, Robin. 1968. *The Environmental Context of Beaver Indian Behavior*. Cambridge, Mass. Thesis--Harvard University.
- Rochon, Timm. 1993. *Saami and Dene concepts of nature*. Umeå: Center for Arctic Research, Umeå University.
- Ross, Eric. 1962. *The Canadian Northwest in 1811: a Study in the Historical Geography of the Old Northwest of the Fur Trade on the Eve of the First Agricultural Settlement*. Thesis--University of Edinburgh.
- Schramm, Tanja. 2005. *Woodland Cree Traditional Environmental Knowledge of Critical Ungulate Habitat in the Caribou Mountains of Alberta*. Thesis (Ph. D.). Edmonton: University of Alberta.

- Sparling, James. 1986. *The Peace-Athabasca Delta a Description of the Resources and an Evaluation of Management Alternatives*. Winnipeg: The University of Manitoba.
- Spyce, Tera Marlene. 2009. *Disruption in Place Attachment: Insights of young Aboriginal adults on the social and Cultural Impacts of Industrial Development in Northern Alberta*. Thesis (M.C.) Edmonton: University of Alberta. Dept. of Rural Economy.
- Steinmann, Michael, 2005. *Alberta's Economic Development of the Athabasca Oil Sands*. Ph.D., University of Southern California.
- Stingel, Janine, 1994. *In the Presence of Mine Enemies: Anti-Semitism in the Alberta Social Credit Party*. M.A., McGill University.
- Stone, Donald Norman George. 1970. *The Process of Rural Settlement in the Athabasca Area, Alberta*. Thesis (M.A.) Edmonton: University of Alberta.
- Stotyn, Ronald Irwin, 2003. *Education in the Ether: A Historical Study of "The Alberta School Broadcasts"; circa 1929—1959*. Ph.D., Southern Illinois University at Carbondale.
- Tande, G.F. 1977. *Forest fire History Around Jasper Townsite. Jasper National Park, Alberta*. Msc thesis. Department of Botany. University of Alberta, Edmonton.
- Teclaff, Ludwik A. 1967. *The River Basin in History and Law*. The Hague, Martinus Nijhoff. Based on thesis, New York University.
- Thomson, Terri Leigh, 1996. *Community Involvement in Museum and Heritage Activities: A Case Study from Hinton, Alberta, Canada*. M.A., University of Alberta.
- Ugarenko, Leonard G. 1979. *The Beaver Indians and the Fur Trade on the Peace River, 1700-1850*. M.A., York University.
- Vanast, W. J. 1996. *Arctic Bodies, Frontier Souls: Missionaries and Medical Care in the Canadian North, 1896-1926*. Thesis (Ph. D.)--University of Wisconsin.
- Willie, Crystal Lee Bieber, 2004. *The Pioneer, Ethnicity and Alberta's Community Museums*. M.A., University of Alberta.
- Wood, Patricia Katharine, 1995. *Nationalism from the Margins: The Development of National and Ethnic Identities Among Italian Immigrants in Alberta and British Columbia, 1880-1980*. Ph.D., Duke University.
- Yantz, Jennifer L., 2005. *Indigenous knowledge of the Land and Protected Areas: Fond*

du Lac Denesuline Nation and the Athabasca Sand Dunes, Saskatchewan.
Winnipeg: University of Manitoba.

Younie, Angela M., 2008. *Prehistoric Microblade Technology in the Oilsands region of Northeastern Alberta: A Technological Analysis of Microblade Production at Archaeological Site HiOv-89.* M.A., Edmonton: University of Alberta.

Methodology and Continuing Research

Alberta. Recreation, Parks and Wildlife Foundation. 1983. *Framework for a System Approach to Interpreting Alberta's Natural History: Part 1 - Interpretive Media Materials.* 1983. Edmonton, AB: Recreation, Parks and Wildlife Foundation.

Bodnar, Diana Lynn. 1979. *Site Types Manual: For the Alberta Inventory of Potential Historic Sites.* Edmonton, Alta.: Dept. of Culture, Historic Sites.

Coates, Kenneth. 1996. *The Historiography of the Provincial Norths.* [Thunder Bay, Ont.?]: Centre for Northern Studies, Lakehead University.

Corbett, Bryan. 1992. *From the Past to the Future: A Guide to the Holdings of the University of Alberta Archives.* Edmonton: University of Alberta Archives.

———. 1996. *Guide to native sources at the University of Alberta Archives.* With contributions by Alan Contois, Erika Radenovich-Banski, Andrew Drummond. Edmonton: University of Alberta Archives.

Cottam, S. Barry. 1997. *Aboriginal Peoples and Archives: A Brief History of Aboriginal and European Relations in Canada.* Ottawa: National Archives of Canada.

Cronon, William. 2006. "The Uses of Environmental History," In: *Canadian Environmental History: Essential Readings.* Edited by David Freeland Duke. Toronto: Canadian Scholars' Press.

Finlay, John L. 2000. *The Structure of Canadian History.* 6th ed. Scarborough, ON: Prentice Hall Allyn and Bacon Canada.

Hanks, Christopher C. and David L. Pokotylo. 1983. "Dene Names as an Organizing Principle in Ethnoarchaeological Research," *Musk-Ox*, 33: 49-55.

Helm, June. 1979. "Long term Research Among the Dogrib and Other Dene," In: *Long Term Field Research in Social Anthropology*, Edited by George M. Foster, Thayer Scudder, Elizabeth Colson, Robert V. Kemper: 145-63. New York: Academic Press.

Helm, June Terry Alliband, Terry Birk, Virginia Lawson, Suzanne Reisner, Craig

- Sturtevant, and Stanley Witkowski. 1975. "The Contact History of the Subarctic Athapaskans: An Overview," *Proceedings: Northern Athapaskan Conference*, 1971. Edited by A. McFayden Clark, 1: 302-46. Mercury Series, Canadian Ethnology Service Paper 27. Ottawa: National Museum of Man.
- Helm, June, and Beryl Gillespie. 1981. "Dogrib Oral Tradition As History: War and Peace in the 1820s," *Journal of Anthropological Research*. 37: 8-27.
- Myers, Helen. ed. 1993. *Ethnomusicology*. 1st American Edition. New York : W.W. Norton.
- MacEachern, Alan and William J. Turkel. eds. 2009. *Method and Meaning in Canadian Environmental History*. 2009. Toronto: Nelson Education.
- Owens, Brian M. 1989. *A Guide to the Archives of the Oblates of Mary Immaculate, Province of Alberta-Saskatchewan*. Edmonton: Missionary Oblates, Grandin Province.
- Patterson, Graeme. 1990. *History and Communications, Harold Innis, Marshall McLuhan, the Interpretation of History*. Toronto: The University of Toronto Press.
- Sprague, D. N. 1990. *Post-Confederation Canada: The Structure of Canadian History Since 1867*. Scarborough, ON: Prentice-Hall Canada.
- Wood, W. Raymond. 1990. "Ethnohistory and Historical Method," *Archaeological Method and Theory*, Vol. 2: 81-109.

Web Resources

[AMICUS](#)

[LIBRARY AND ARCHIVES CANADA](#)

[CANADIAN MUSEUM OF CIVILIZATION](#)

[ART OF THIS LAND \(NATIONAL GALLERY OF CANADA-VIRTUAL EXHIBITION\)](#)

[THE GLENBOW MUSEUM](#)

[PROVINCIAL ARCHIVES OF ALBERTA](#)

[ALBERTA FOLKLORE AND LOCAL HISTORY COLLECTION](#)

[ATHABASCA UNIVERSITY DIGITIZATION PORTAL](#)

[ATHABASCA RIVER BASIN RESEARCH INSTITUTE \(ARBRI\).](#)

[ATHABASCA WATERSHED PLANNING AND ADVISORY COUNCIL](#)

[ARCHAEOLOGICAL SOCIETY OF ALBERTA](#)

[ALBERTA WATER PORTAL](#)

[OUR FUTURE, OUR PAST: THE ALBERTA HERITAGE DIGITIZATION PROJECT](#)

[ROYAL ALBERTA MUSEUM](#)

[ATLAS OF ALBERTA LAKES](#)

[ATLAS OF ALBERTA RAILWAYS](#)

[ARCHIVES OF MANITOBA](#)

[MANITOBA MÉTIS FEDERATION](#)

[HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY ARCHIVES](#)

[CENTRE FOR RUPERT'S LAND STUDIES](#)

[H. SANFORD RILEY CENTRE FOR CANADIAN HISTORY](#)

[ATLAS OF CANADA: RIVERS](#)

[THE BEAVER, INDEX SEARCH](#)

[MACKENZIE RIVER BASIN BOARD](#)

[MACKENZIE VALLEY ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT REVIEW BOARD](#)

[ALBERTA WATER RESEARCH INSTITUTE](#)

[THE PEMBINA INSTITUTE](#)

[THE PEMBINA INSTITUTE: CONNECTING THE DROPS](#)

[THE PEMBINA INSTITUTE: TROUBLED WATERS, TROUBLING TRENDS \(FULL REPORT\)](#)

[EARTH TRENDS: THE ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION PORTAL](#)

[THE RYGA CENTRE](#)

[ALBERTA GENEALOGICAL SOCIETY](#)

[ALBERTA JASPER HOUSE HISTORY](#)

[THE WHYTE MUSEUM](#)

[THE PRINCE OF WHALES NORTHERN
HERITAGE CENTRE](#)

[CANADIAN INSTITUTE FOR HISTORICAL
MICROREPRODUCTIONS \(CIHM\)](#)

[SOUTH PEACE REGIONAL ARCHIVES](#)

[MÉTIS NATIONAL COUNCIL
HISTORICAL ONLINE DATABASE](#)

[UNIVERSITY OF ALBERTA ARCHIVES](#)

[BOREAL RESEARCH INSTITUTE](#)

[CANADIAN CIRCUMPOLAR INSTITUTE](#)

[INUIT ARTIST PRINT DATABASE](#)

[JASPER NATIONAL PARK](#)

[WOOD BUFFALO NATIONAL PARK](#)

[INDEX TO ART IN CANADA TO 1930](#)

[INDIAN AND NORTHERN AFFAIRS](#)

[CANADIAN CIRCUMPOLAR INSTITUTE](#)

Archives

Ambrose University College (Calgary)
Archives of the Diocese of Rupert's Land (Nesbitt Bay)
Athabasca Archives (Athabasca)
Athabasca University Thomas A. Edge Archives & Special Collections (Athabasca)
Athabasca University Digitization Portal
Blackfalds & Area Historical Society
Canadian Architectural Archives (Calgary)
Canadian Moravian Historical Society (Edmonton)
City of Edmonton Archives (Edmonton)
College & Association of Registered Nurses of Alberta (Edmonton)
Edmonton Public Schools Archives and Museum (Edmonton)
Edson Public Library and Archives (Edson)
Glenbow Archives (Calgary)
Hudson's Bay Company Archives (Winnipeg)
Jasper-Yellowhead Museum and Archives (Jasper)
Jewish Archives and Historical Society of Edmonton and Northern Alberta (Edmonton)
Legal Archives Society of Alberta (Calgary)
Lutheran Historical Institute (Edmonton)
Mennonite Historical Society of Alberta (Alberta)
Millet and District Museum and Archives (Millet)
Musée Heritage Museum (St. Albert)
National Archives (Ottawa)
Northwest Territories Archives
Paul D. Fleck Library and Archives at the Banff Centre (Banff)
Provincial Archives of Alberta (Edmonton)
Provincial Archives of Manitoba (Winnipeg)
Red Deer and District Archives (Red Deer)
South Peace Regional Archives (Grande Prairie)
Strathcona County Museum and Archives (Sherwood Park)
Treaties and Historical Research Centre (Ottawa)
Ukrainian Canadian Archives and Museum of Alberta (Edmonton)
United Church of Canada - Alberta and Northwest Conference Archives (Edmonton)
University of Alberta Archives (Edmonton)
University of Calgary Archives (Calgary)
University of Calgary Library - Special Collections (Calgary)
University of Manitoba Archives and Special Collections (Winnipeg)
University of Saskatchewan Archives (Saskatoon)
Whyte Museum of the Canadian Rockies, Archives & Library (Banff)

Athabasca University Databases

Alberta Folklore and Local History Collection

Annotated Bibliography of Canadian Demography

Archives Canada

ArchiviaNet

Arctic and Antarctic Regions

Arctic Blue Books

Arctic Science and Technology Information System (ASTIS)

Atlas of Canada

Bibliography of Native North Americans

Canadian Disaster Database

Canadian Encyclopedia

Canadian Federal Government Databases Available Through the Internet

Canadian Native Law Cases

Canadian North West Archival Network

Canadian Points of View Reference Centre

Canadian Reference Centre

CanLII

CANSIM II

CBCA Current Events

Champlain Society Digital Collection

CPI.Q

Dictionary Of Canadian Biography

E-STAT

Early Canadiana Online

Early Encounters in North America

eHealth Online Literature Catalogue

eHRAF World Cultures

eLibrary Canada

Environment Complete

Encyclopedia of Canada's Peoples

First Nations Periodical Index

Globe and Mail (Canada's Heritage from 1844)

Government of Canada Electronic Publications

History Resource Centre: World

Institute of Intergovernmental Relations Databases

JSTOR

MLA International Bibliography

Native Health Databases (National Library of Medicine)

North American Immigrant Letters, Diaries and Oral Histories

North American Indian Thought and Culture

North American Women's Letters and Diaries

Oral History Online

Peel's Prairie Provinces

PolarInfo

Slavery, Abolition and Social Justice, 1490-2007

Wildlife & Ecology Studies Worldwide

Wilson OmniFile

World Book Advanced

World History Collection

WorldCat

WorldLII

Journals

Agricultural History

Alaska Life

Alaska Sportsman

Alberta Archeological Review

The Alberta Gazette

Alberta History

The Alberta Law Review

Alberta Magazine

The Albertan

Alberta Oil

American Antiquity

American Ethnologist

American Indian Culture and Research-Journal

American Indian Hobbyist

Anthropologica

Anthropological Papers of the-

American Museum of Natural History

Arctic

Arctic Anthropology

Athabasca Advocate

B.C.L.A. Quarterly

B.C. Studies

The Beaver

Border Crossings

Canadian Art

Canadian Bulletin of the History of-Medicine

Canadian Dimension

Canadian Ethnic Studies

Canadian Folk Music Bulletin

Canadian Geographic

Canadian Geographical Journal

Canadian Forestry Journal

The Canadian Historical Review

Canadian Journal of Archaeology

Canadian Journal of Native Studies

Canadian Native Law Reporter

Canadian North-West (Historical Society Publications)

Canadian Public Policy

Case Studies in Adaptive Management

Constitutional Forum

Criminal Justice History

Culture

Ecological Economics

Ecologist

Ethnohistory

Ethnomusicology

Ethnos

Fieldiana: Anthropology

Forestry Branch Bulletin

Frontiers: A Journal of Women Studies
The Geographical Review
Great Plains Quarterly
Heritage Canada
Historic Alberta (Alberta Historical Resources Foundation).
Historical Magazine of the Protestant-Episcopal Church
International Journal of Oral History
The Journal of American Folklore
Journal of the American Water-Resources Association
Journal of Aquatic Ecosystem Stress-and Recovery
Journal of the American Water-Resources Association
Journal of Anthropological Research
Journal of Aquatic Ecosystem Stress-and Recovery
Journal of Canadian Studies
Journal of Indigenous Thought
Journal of International Folk Music
The Journal of Geology
Journal of Paleontology
Journal of Western Anthropology
Journal of Geology
Journals of the Senate of Canada
Landmark
Language in Society
Legacy
Nature
The Magazine of Western History
Manitoba History
The Métis Voice
The Muskox
New Trail
Northwest Journal
Past Imperfect
Pioneer West
Prairie Forum
Publications in Archeology (Ottawa)
Pulp and Paper Magazine of Canada
Quaternaria
Quaternary International
Quaternary Research
Slave River Journal

Social Science and-Medicine
Tree-Ring Bulletin
Up Here
The Western Canadian Journal of Anthropology
The Western Historical Quarterly
Western Living Magazine
Western People

Comparative Analysis

- Anfinson, John O. 2003. *The River We Have Wrought: A History of the Upper Mississippi*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Armstrong, Christopher. 2009. *The River Returns: An Environmental History of the Bow*. Montréal; Ithaca: McGill-Queen's University Press.
- Benke, Arthur C. and Colbert E. Cushing, eds. 2005. *Rivers of North America*. Boston: Academic Press.
- Cox, R. 1832. *Adventures on the Columbia River Including the Narrative of a Residence of Six Years on the Western Side of the Rocky Mountains, Among Various Tribes of Indians Hitherto Unknown: Together with a Journey Across the American Continent*. New York: J. & J. Harper.
- . 1957. *The Columbia River*. Edited by E.I. Stewart and J.R. Stewart. Normal: University of Oklahoma Press.
- Cronon, William. 1991. *Nature's Metropolis: Chicago and the Great West*. New York: W. W. Norton.
- Diamond, Beverley. 2008. *Native American Music in Eastern North America: Experiencing Music, Expressing Culture*. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Grim, John. ed. 2001. *Indigenous Traditions and Ecology: The Interbeing of Cosmology and Community*. Cambridge, MA: Distributed by Harvard University Press for the Center for the Study of World Religions, Harvard Divinity School.
- Hamilton, Janice. 2006. *The St. Lawrence River: History, Highway and Habitat*. Westmount, Que.: Redlader Pub.
- MacGregor, James G. 1949. *Blankets and Beads: A History of the Saskatchewan River*. Edmonton: Institute of Applied Art.
- Mauch, Christof and Thomas Zeller. 2008. *Rivers in History: Perspectives on Waterways in Europe and North America*. Pittsburgh, Pa.: University of Pittsburgh Press.
- Nettl, Bruno. 1969. "Musical Areas Reconsidered: A Critique of North American Indian Research," In: *Essays in Musicology in Honor of Dragan Plamanac on his 70th Birthday*. Pittsburgh: University of Pittsburgh Press.
- Page, Jake. 2003. *In the Hands of the Great Spirit: The 20,000 Year History of American Indians*. New York: Free Press.

Witmer, Robert. 1982. *The Musical Life of the Blood Indians*. Ottawa: National Museums of Canada.

Wilson, J. W. 1973. *People in the Way: The Human Aspects of the Columbia River Project*. Toronto: University of Toronto Press.